



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



HN LYHK Q

Educational Text-Books.

ENGLISH.

Page 2

ARNOLD'S History of Rome. 8vo.....	3 00
Lectures on Modern History. 12mo.	1 25
BOJESSEN and Arnold's Manual of Grecian and Roman Antiquities. 12mo..	1 00
CHASE'S Treatise on Algebra. 12mo.....	1 00
CROSBY'S First Lessons in Geometry. 18mo.....	38
CHAMPLIN, J. T. A Practical Grammar of the English Language.....	34
COMING'S Class-Book of Physiology: for the use of Schools and Private Families. 12mo. 270 pages, 24 plates and 200 woodcuts.....	Muslin, 1 00
Companion to Class-Book. 12mo.....	Muslin, 50
CORNELL'S Primary Geography. Forming part 1st of a systematic series of School Geographies. Small quarto, beautifully illustrated.....	50
Intermediate Geography.....	
High School Geography and Atlas.....	
COUSIN'S Lectures on the History of Philosophy. 2 vols. 8vo.....	3 00
" on the True, the Beautiful, and the Good.....	1 50
COVELL'S Digest of English Grammar. 12mo.....	50
COE'S Drawing Cards, in 10 parts each.....	25
GILLISPIE'S Land Surveying. 1 vol. 8vo.....	2 00
GRAHAM'S English Synonymes. Edited by Professor Reed. 12mo.....	1 00
GREENE'S History of the Middle Ages. 12mo.....	1 00
GREEN'S Elementary Botany. A beautifully illustrated quarto.....	75
Class-Book of Botany. 1 vol. 4to.	1 50
GUIZOT'S History of Civilization. Notes by Professor Henry, 12mo.....	1 00
HAMILTON'S (Sir William) Philosophy. Arranged and edited by O. W. Wight,	1 50
HAND-BOOK of Anglo-Saxon Root-Words. 12mo.....	50
" of Anglo-Saxon Derivatives. 12mo.....	75
" of the Ingrafted Words of the English Language. 12mo.....	1 00
JAEGER'S Class-Book in Zoology. 18mo.	42
JOHNSTON'S Chemistry of Common Life. 2 vols. 12mo.....	2 00
KEIGHTLEY'S Mythology of Greece and Rome. 18mo.....	42
KEPPEN'S Historical Geography. "The World in the Middle Ages." 2 vols. 12mo. 850 pp.....	2 00
The Same Work. 1 vol. folio, letter press, 6 maps.....	4 50
LATHAM'S Hand-Book of the English Language. 12mo.....	1 25
MANGNALL'S Historical Questions. With American additions. 12mo.....	1 00
MARKHAM'S School History of England. Edited by Eliza Robbins, 12mo..	75
MANDEVILLE'S Reading Books, viz:	
1. Primary Reader. 18mo.....	10
2. Second Reader. 18mo.....	17
3. Third Reader. 16mo.....	25
4. Fourth Reader. 12mo.....	38
Course of Reading. 12mo.....	5
Elements of Reading and Oratory. 12mo. New edit.....	1 00
New Primary Reader.....	12
New Second Reader.....	
MARSHALL'S Book of Oratory. 12mo. 500 pp.....	1 00
First Book.....	62
MULLIGAN'S Exposition of the Nature of the English Language. 12mo.....	1 50
OTIS'S Easy Lessons in L.....	1 87
	Cloth, 2 25

D. APPLETON & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

OTIS'S Studies of Animals. 5 Parts.....	1 87
— First Lessons in Pencil Drawing.....	Cloth, 2 25
— Elementary Drawing Cards. Landscape, 12 Lessons; Animals, 12 Lessons.	Each set, 25
PALMER'S First Lessons in Book-keeping. 12mo.....	Boards, 19
— Ruled Blanks for do.....	1
PERKINS' Primary Arithmetic. Combining mental and written exercises. Introductory to Elementary and Practical.....	19
— Elementary do. Introductory to the Higher Arithmetic. 12mo. 347 pp.	38
— Practical do. Containing over 3900 examples for practice. 12mo. 356 pages.....	Muslin, 63
— Key to do. Containing complete and full solutions. 12mo. 324 pages.....	Muslin, 75
— Higher do. New edition with appendix. 12mo. 342 pages.....	75
— Elementary Geometry. With practical applications. 12mo. 320 pages	Sheep, 1 00
— Plane and Solid Geometry. (College edition.) Large 8vo.....	1 50
— Elements of Algebra. Revised edition, just published. 12mo. Sheep,	75
— Treatise on do. (College edition.) Large 8vo 420 pages. Sheep,	1 50
— Plane Trigonometry and Surveying. With tables. Large 8vo.....	1 50
PUTZ and Arnold's Manual of Ancient Geography and History. 12mo.....	1 00
— Mediæval Geography and History. 12mo.....	75
— Modern do. do. 12mo.....	1 00
QUACKENBOS'S First Lessons in English Composition. 12mo.....	45
— Advanced Course of Composition and Rhetoric. 12mo.....	1 00
REID'S Dictionary of the English Language, with Derivations, &c. 12mo..	1 00
ROBBINS' (ELIZA) Class-Book of Poetry, for the use of Schools or Private Instruction. 16mo.....	75
— Guide to Knowledge. Adapted for Young Persons. 16mo.....	63
SEWELL'S First History of Greece. 16mo.....	63
— First History of Rome. 16mo.....	50
SHAKESPEARIAN Reader. By Prof. Hows. 12mo.....	1 25
SPALDING'S History of English Literature. 12mo.,.....	Cloth, 1 00
TAYLOR'S Manual of Modern and Ancient History. Edited by Prof. Henry. 8vo.....	Sheep, 2 50
— Ancient History, separate.....	Cloth, 2 25
— Modern do. do.	1 25
WARING'S Elements of Agriculture. 12mo.....	Muslin, 1 50
WRIGHT'S Primary Lessons; or, Child's First Book.....	75
YOUNG'S Primary Lessons; or, Child's First Book.....	12
YOUNG'S Class-Book of Chemistry. 12mo.....	75
— Chart of Chemistry. On Rollers.....	5 00
— Chart of Chemistry. Atlas form.....	2 00

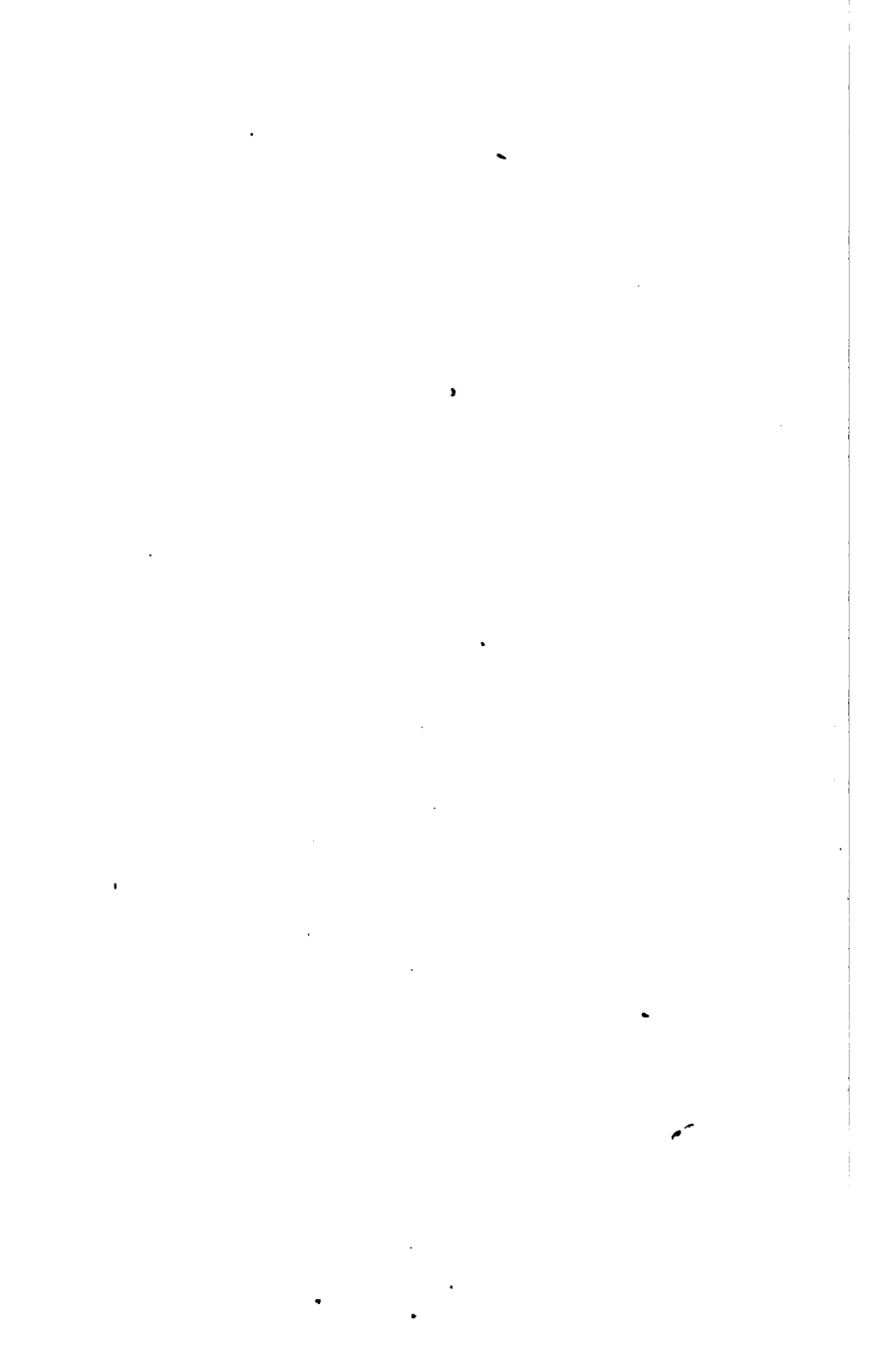
GREEK AND LATIN.

ARNOLD'S First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar, by Spencer. 12mo.....	75
— First Latin Book. By Harkness. 12mo.....	75
HARKNESS'S Second Latin Book and Reader. 12mo. pp. 262, beautifully printed.....	90
ARNOLD'S Latin Prose Composition. 12mo.....	1 00
— Cornelius Nepos. With Notes. 12mo.....	1 00
— First Greek Book. New edition, revised.....	75
— Greek Prose Composition. New revised edition. 12mo.....	75
— Second Greek Prose Composition. 12mo.....	75
— Greek Reading Book. Edited by Spencer 12mo.....	1 25
DOUGLASS'S Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. 12mo.....	75

Continued in the end of this volume.



General B. H. H. H.



ARNOLD'S

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, P. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

SIXTEENTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
846 & 848 BROADWAY.
M.DCCC.LVII.



046 x 91

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New-York.

PREFACE.

ARNOLD'S *First and Second Latin Book* was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

the work worthy of yet higher favor and success. The entire book has been rewritten and many important additions have been made.

The Latin of the *First and Second Latin Book* has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to *simplify*, and, as far as possible, to *remove* the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English,

the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an *advance* and a *review*.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in point of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of *analysis* and *synthesis*.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared *mainly* from Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book*; the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's New Latin Delectus; Analysis of Latin Verbs, by the same author; and Pinnock's First Latin Grammar; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the First Latin Book, by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's Latin Prose Compo-

sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's Analysis of the English Language.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, July 18, 1851

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

	Page
I. Letters	1
II. Syllables	2
III. Quantity	2
IV. Accentuation	2
V. Sounds of the Letters	3
I. The Continental Method	3
II. The English Method	4

LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Lesson.		Page
I.	Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate	7
II.	Verbs.—First Conjugation	8
III.	First Conjugation—continued	11
IV.	Second Conjugation	12
V.	Third Conjugation	14
VI.	Fourth Conjugation	16
VII.	Four Conjugations.—Plural Number	17
VIII.	Nouns.—Nominative Case	19
IX.	Nominative Case—continued	23
X.	Vocative Case	24
XI.	Apposition.—Modified Subject	26
XII.	Genitive Case.—Modified Subject	27
XIII.	Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate	31
XIV.	Accusative—continued.—Adverbial Modifiers	34
XV.	Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate	35
XVI.	Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate	38
XVII.	First Declension	40
XVIII.	Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ūs</i> and <i>īm</i>	48

Less. 1.	Page.
XIX. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ər</i> and <i>ır</i> . . .	46
XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension . . .	47
XXI. First and Second Declension—continued . . .	51
XXII. First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation	53
XXIII. Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I	55
XXIV. Third Declension.—Class II	58
XXV. Third Declension.—Class III	60
XXVI. Third Declension.—Class IV.	63
XXVII. Third Declension.—Genitives in <i>iim</i> .—Gender . . .	66
XXVIII. Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other	68
XXIX. Adjectives.—Third Declension	71
XXX. Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension	75
XXXI. Nouns.—Fifth Declension	78
XXXII. Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender	81
XXXIII. Verba.— <i>Esse</i> , to be.—Predicate, <i>Esse</i> with a Noun or an Adjective	85
XXXIV. Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with <i>Esse</i> in the Pre- dicate	87
XXXV. Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations	90
XXXVI. Third Conjugation.—Class I.— <i>Second Root the same as the First</i>	93
XXXVII. Third Conjugation.—Class II.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	96
XXXVIII. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	97
XXXIX. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	100
XL. Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity— <i>Radical Vowel lengthened (and often changed)</i>	103
XLI. Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity— <i>Reduplication</i>	105
XLII. Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity— <i>Second Root after the analogy of other conjugations</i>	107
XLIII. Subjunctive Mood	110
XLIV. Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose	113
XLV. Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation	115
XLVI. Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pro- nouns	119
XLVII. Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations	123

CONTENTS.

ix

Lessor.	Page.
XLVIII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in <i>is</i> of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns	127
XLIX. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun	130
I. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	132
II. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles	134
LII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Indefinite and Possessive Pronouns	136
LIII. Verb <i>Essä</i> , to be	138
LIV. Verb <i>Essä</i> , continued.—Comparison of Adjectives	142
LV. Compounds of <i>Essä</i> .—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numerical Adjectives	145
LVI. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Continued Action	148
LVII. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action	151
LVIII. Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice	154
LIX. Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice	158
LX. Imperative Mood—Active and Passive	160
LXI. Infinitive Mood	163
LXII. Participles.—Ablative Absolute	166
LXIII. Gerunds and Supines	169
LXIV. Participle in <i>düs</i>	172
LXV. First Conjugation	174
LXVI. Second Conjugation	175
LXVII. Third Conjugation	176
LXVIII. Fourth Conjugation	177
LXIX. Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object	178
LXX. Deponent Verbs	180
LXXI. Irregular Verbs.— <i>Possä, Vellä, Nollä, Mallä</i>	182
LXXII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Ferrä, Fiert</i>	185
LXXIII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Irä, Edä</i>	189
LXXIV. Periphrastic Conjugations	191
LXXV. Impersonal Verbs	193
LXXVI. Impersonal Periphrastic	195
LXXVII. Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions	197
LXXVIII. Conjunctions	199
LXXIX. Subjunctive Mood with <i>üt, nē, quō</i>	201

Lesson.	Page.
LXXX. Subjunctive with <i>quōmōdō</i> , <i>quā</i> , and other Conjunctions	203
LXXXI. Interrogative Sentences	205
LXXXII. Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with <i>quā</i>	207
LXXXIII. Participles	209
LXXXIV. Participles, continued	212
LXXXV. Derivation of Nouns	215
LXXXVI. Derivation of Adjectives	217
LXXXVII. Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs	219
LXXXVIII. Composition of Words	222

PARADIGMS, &c.

1. Nouns.—Endings of Genitive Singular	227
2. Gender	227
3. First Declension	227
4. Second Declension	228
5. Third Declension	229
6. Fourth Declension	232
7. Fifth Declension	233
8. Case-Endings of Substantives	233
9. Table of Genders	234
10. Adjectives.—First and Second Declension	235
11. Third Declension	236
12. Comparison of Adjectives	238
13. Numerals	238
14. Substantive Pronouns	239
15. Adjective Pronouns	239
16. Verbs.— <i>Essē</i>	241
17. Infinitive Endings	243
18. First Conjugation	243
19. Second Conjugation	245
20. Third Conjugation	247
21. Fourth Conjugation	250
22. Formation of Second Root	252
23. Deponent Verbs	252
24. Irregular Verbs	252
25. Periphrastic Conjugations	257
26. Impersonal Verbs	257

CONTENTS.

xi

SYNTAX.

	Page
Introduction	259

CHAPTER I.

Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

Section I. Subject	260
“ II. Predicate	260

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

Section I. Use of Modifiers	262
“ II. Modifiers of Nouns	262
“ III. Modifiers of Adjectives	263
“ IV. Modifiers of Verbs	264
“ “ § I. Objects	265
“ “ § II. Adverbial Modifiers	268
“ V. Modifiers of Adverbs	271

CHAPTER III.

<i>Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines</i>	271
--	-----

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM	275
CAUTIONS	277
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	279
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	291

EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to *Differences of Idiom*, page 275 ; the small letters to *Cautions*, page 277.

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered into Latin by a single word ; as, *natural-to-man*, *hūmānūs* ; *it-is*, *est*, &c.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

THE two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

I. LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

REM. 1. The vowel sounds are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*, which is not used in Latin.

REM. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., *æ* in *Cæsar*.

REM. 3. *X* and *z** are called double consonants; *l, m, n*, and *r*, liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of *h* and *s*, mutes.

* *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

II. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade*, are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo-re*, *vi-ce*, *a-cu-te*, *per-sua-de*.

III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in *quantity* or *length*, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is *long* in quantity:

1) When it contains a *diphthong*, as the first syllable of *cædo*.

2) When its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any *two consonants*, except a *mute* followed by a *liquid*; as the second syllables of *erexit* and *magister*.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

REM. The letter *h* does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel.

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash — when *long*, by the curve ~ when *short*, and by the two together * when *common*.

IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed:

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, *hó'mo*, a man.

2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, *rādīcīs*, *con'sūlīs*.

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syllable preceding the *primary* accent; as, *dēmon'strātūr*.

V. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.*

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.*

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows:—

a	ǎ in <i>father</i> ;	e. g.,	ǎris.
e	{ 1. ā in <i>made</i> ;	e. g.,	ēdit.
			2. ě in <i>met</i> ;
i	ē in <i>me</i> ;	e. g.,	īrě.
o	{ 1. ō in <i>no</i> ;	e. g.,	ōră.
			2. ǒ in <i>nor</i> ;
u	ø in <i>do</i> ;	e. g.,	ūnă.
y	ē in <i>me</i> ;	e. g.,	nȳmphă.

REM. Y is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by *quantity* and *accent*, (III. and IV.)

2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

æ and œ . . . ā in *made* ; e. g., ætās, coelūm.

au . . . ou in *out* ; e. g., aurūm.

REM. The vowels in *ei* and *eu* are generally pronounced separately

* For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. George W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown University.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels* *

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent.

(a) In all *monosyllables*, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound if at the end of the word; as, *si*, *re*.
- 2) The *short* sound if followed by a consonant; as, *sit*, *rem*; except *post*, *monosyllables* in *es*, and *plural cases* in *os*; as, *hos* (a plural case).

(b) In an *accented penult*, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *deus*, *pater*, *patres*; except *tibi* and *sibi*.
- 2) The *short* sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*; as, *bellum*, *rexit*.

(c) In any *accented syllable* except the penult, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound before a vowel or diphthong; as *e* in *eadem*.

* The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The *rules*, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.

2) The *short* sound before a consonant, as *o* in *dēminus*: except,

a) *U* before a single consonant, or a mute followed by *r* or *h* (and perhaps *l*); as, *Pūnicus*, *salūbritas*.

b) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute before *l*, *r*, or *h*), followed by *e* or *i* before another vowel; as, *dōceo*, *ācria*.

(d) In all *unaccented syllables*, vowels have the *short* sound; as, *cantāmus*, *vīgilat*: except,

1) Final *a* in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound of *ah*, as in the word *America*; e. g., *musa* (*musah*).

2) Final syllables in *i* (except *tibi* and *sibi*), *es*, and *os*, in *plural cases*; as, *hōmini*, *dies*, *illos* (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, *diēbus*, *irātus*.

REM. *E*, *o*, and *u*, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

2. The Sounds of the Diphthongs.

Æ and *œ*, like *e* in the same situation; e. g., *Cæsar*, *Dædalus*.

Au, as in the English, *author*; e. g., *aurum*.

Eu, " " *neuter*; e. g., *neuter* (both Eng. and Latin).

Ei, as in the English, *height*; e. g., *dein*.

Oi, " " *coin*; e. g., *proin*.

REM. 1. The vowels in *ei* and *oi* are generally pronounced separately.

REM. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used as

diphthonga. *U* is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of *w*; as, *suade* — swade: except, *Ui* in *huic*, and *cui*, which has the sound of long *i*.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; *c* and *g*, however, are soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, and hard in other situations: *ch* is always hard, like *k*; as, *charta* (*kartah*).

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

LESSON I.

Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.

1. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *propositions* or *sentences*; as, *āmās*, thou lovest; *puēr lūdīt*, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the *subject*, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, *puēr lūdīt*, *puēr* (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and *lūdīt* (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition *āmās*, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending *ās*, of *āmās*, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be *I, he, or they*, but must be *thou*.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a *verb*; e. g., *āmāt*, he loves.

6. The *analysis* of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

EXAMPLE 1.—Proposition, *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdīt* (plays).

Puēr (the boy) is the *subject*, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). *Lūdīt* (plays) is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, *Amās* (thou lovest).

Amās is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject. *Thou*, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending *ās*, of the predicate *āmās*, fully implies it.

7. Exercise in Analysis.*

Puellā (the girl) *cantāt* (sings). *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdēt* (will play). *Pātēr* (the father) *vīdēbīt* (will see). *Mātēr* (the mother) *rīdēbāt* (was laughing). *Currēbāt* (he was running). *Cantābīt* (he will sing). *Lūdēbāt* (he was playing). *Arābāt* (he was ploughing).

LESSON II.

Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses *existence, condition, or action* (generally the *existence, condition, or action* of some person

* These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between *subject* and *predicate*; and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, *I, thou, he, &c.*), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express *emphasis* or *contrast* will be considered in another place.

or *thing*, called its *subject*): as, *est*, he is; *dormīt*, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); *āmāt*, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its *meaning*, without reference to any person or thing, as *āmārē*, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood*.

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an *assertion* or *question*, referring to its subject, as *āmāt*, he loves, it is said to be in the *Indicative Mood*.*

11. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting in *present* time; as, *āmāt*, he loves. It is then said to be in the *Present Tense*.
- 2) As acting in *past* time; as, *āmābāt*, he was loving. It is then said to be in the *Imperfect Tense*.
- 3) As acting in *future* time (i. e., about to act); as, *āmābīt*, he will love. It is then said to be in the *Future Tense*.*

12. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As *speaking of himself*; as, *āmō*, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *First Person*.
- 2) As *spoken to*; as, *āmās*, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Second Person*.
- 3) As *spoken of*; as, *āmāt*, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Third Person*.

13. A verb may represent its subject,

- 1) As consisting of *only one* person or thing; as, *āmāt*, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Singular Number*.

* The other *moods* and *tenses* will be noticed in another place.

- 2) As consisting of *more than one* person or thing; as, *ămant*, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Plural Number*
14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:
- 1) *The Root*, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, *ăm* in *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbît*.
 - 2) *The Endings* which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., *ămără*, *ămă*, *ămăt*, and *ămăbît*—the endings are, *ără*, *ă*, *ăt*, and *ăbît*.
15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ără*; as, *ămără*, to love. These are said to be of

The First Conjugation.

16. In verbs of this conjugation,
- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ără*; as, *ămără*; root, *ăm*.
 - 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following endings:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ăt,	ăbăt,	ăbît.

PARADIGM.

Amără, to love: root, *ăm*.

Present.	Am-ăt,	he, she, or it loves (or, is loving).
Imperfect.	Am-ăbăt,	" " " was loving.
Future.	Am-ăbît,	" " " will love (will be loving).

17. VOCABULARY.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>	<i>Key-words.*</i>
Amārē,	to love	(amorous).
Arārē,	to plough	(arable).
Cantārē,	to sing	(canto).
Lāborārē,	to labor	(labour).
Vigīlārē,	to watch	(vigil).

18. Exercise.

1. Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. 3. Arat. 4. Arābat.
 5. Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit.
 9. Laborābit. 10. Vigīlat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amā-
 bit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat, 15. Arābit.

LESSON III.

First Conjugation—continued.

19. VOCABULARY.

Ambūlārē,	to walk	(ambulatory).
Jūrārē,	to swear.	
Pugnārē,	to fight	(pugnacious).
Saltārē,	to dance.	
Spērārē,	to hope.	
Vōcārē,	to call	(vocation).

* These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

† The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. The ending, *at*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see Paradigm). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun *they*, which may represent either *things* or *persons*, and either *males* or *females*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

20. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their *place* is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*; e. g.:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Eng.	<i>He loves,</i>	<i>He was loving,</i>	<i>He will love.</i>
Lat.	<i>Amat,</i>	<i>Amābat,</i>	<i>Amābit.</i>

21. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambūlat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(b) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

LESSON IV.

Verbs.—Second Conjugation.

22. SOME Verbs have the *infinitive* in *ērē*; as, *mōnērē*, to advise. These are said to be of

The Second Conjugation.

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ērē* ; as, *mōnērē* ; root, *mōn*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present, imperfect, and future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following endings :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>ēt,</i>	<i>ēbāt,</i>	<i>ēbīt.</i>

PARADIGM.

Mōnērē, to advise : root, mōn.

Present.	<i>Mōn-ēt,</i>	he, she, or it advises (is advising).
Imperfect.	<i>Mōn-ēbāt,</i>	" " " was advising.
Future.	<i>Mōn-ēbīt,</i>	" " " will advise.

24. VOCABULARY.

<i>Dōcērē,</i>	to teach	(<i>docile</i>).
<i>Dōlērē,</i>	to grieve	(<i>doleful</i>).
<i>Flērē,</i>	to weep.	
<i>Mānērē,</i>	to remain.	
<i>Mōvērē,</i>	to move	(<i>move</i>).
<i>Nērē,</i>	to spin.	
<i>Respondērē,</i>	to answer	(<i>respond</i>).
<i>Ridērē,</i>	to laugh	(<i>ridicule</i>).
<i>Timērē,</i>	to fear, to be afraid	(<i>timid</i>).

25. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. *Ridet.* 2. *Docet.* 3. *Respondet.* 4. *Dolet.*
 5. *Dolēbat.* 6. *Nebat.* 7. *Flebat.* 8. *Manēbat.* 9. *Mo-*
vēbat. 10. *Movēbit.* 11. *Dolēbit.* 12. *Docēbit.* 13.
Respondēbit. 14. *Ridēbit.* 15. *Movet.* 16. *Docēbat.*
 17. *Manēbit.* 18. *Flet.* 19. *Ridēbat.* 20. *Nebit.*

21. Pugnat. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. 28. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Labōrat. 34. Movet. 35. Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(b) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh. 20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

LESSON V.

Verbs.—Third Conjugation.

26. SOME verbs have the *infinitive* in *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule. These are said to be of

The Third Conjugation.

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*; root, *rĕg*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>It,</i>	<i>ēbāt,</i>	<i>ēt.</i>

PARADIGM.

Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule : root, *rĕg.*

Present.	Rĕg-ĭt,	he, she, or it rules (is ruling).
Imperfect.	Rĕg-ĕbāt,	" " " was ruling.
Future.	Rĕg-ēt,	" " " will rule.

28. VOCABULARY.

Bĭbĕrĕ,	to drink	(<i>bibber ; as, wine-bibber</i>).
Cādĕrĕ,	to fall	(<i>cadence</i>).
Currĕrĕ,	to run	(<i>current</i>).
Discĕrĕ,	to learn	(<i>disciple</i>).
Lĕgĕrĕ,	to read	(<i>legible</i>).
Ludĕrĕ,	to play	(<i>ludicrous</i>).
Scribĕrĕ,	to write	(<i>scribe, scribble</i>).

29. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.

16. Labōrat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat. 20. Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet. 24. Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebat. 27. Cadēbat. 28. Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.

(b) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.

16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will remain. 24. He will write.

LESSON VI.

Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.

30. SOME verbs have the infinitive in *īrē*; as, *audīrē*, to hear. These are said to be of

The Fourth Conjugation.

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *īrē*; as, *audīrē*; root, *aud*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>īt,</i>	<i>iēbāt,</i>	<i>iēt.</i>

PARADIGM.

Audīrē, to hear : root, aud.

Present.	Aud-īt,	he, she, or it hears (is hearing).
Imperfect.	Aud-iēbāt,	" " " was hearing.
Future.	Aud-iēt,	" " " will hear.

32. VOCABULARY.

<i>Audīrē,</i>	to hear	(<i>audible</i>).
<i>Custōdirē,</i>	to guard	(<i>custody</i>).
<i>Dormirē,</i>	to sleep	(<i>dormant</i>).
<i>Erūdirē,</i>	to instruct	(<i>erudition</i>).
<i>Scīrē,</i>	to know	(<i>science</i>).
<i>Sītīrē,</i>	to thirst.	
<i>Vēnīrē,</i>	to come.	

33. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. *Custōdit.* 2. *Erūdit.* 3. *Sitit.* 4. *Sitiēbat.*
 5. *Veniēbat.* 6. *Sciēbat.* 7. *Sciet.* 8. *Audiet.* 9.
Dormiet. 10. *Dormit.* 11. *Erudiēbat.* 12. *Custodiet.*
 13. *Venit.* 14. *Audiēbat.* 15. *Erudiet.*

16. Ambūlat. 17. Docet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit.
20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiēbat.
24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4. He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12. He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps. 15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching. 23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping. 31. He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

LESSON . VII.

Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.

34. THE *Four Conjugations* already noticed contain all the *regular* verbs of the Latin language: hence,

- 1) In any *regular* verb, the *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending of the conjugation to which it belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āř,	ēř,	ěř,	īř.

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from each other only in the vowel before ř, which is called the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The *characteristic* vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
ā,	ē,	ē,	ī

REM.—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called *favorite* vowels of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also *ī* as a *favorite* vowel, as in the present ending, *ūt* ; e. g., *rēgīt*, he rules.

- 2) In any *regular* verb, the *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows :

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
Conj. I.	āt,	abāt,	abīt.
II.	ēt,	ebāt,	ebīt.
III.	īt,	ebāt,	ēt.
IV.	īt,	iebāt,	iēt.

35. In any *regular* verb, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting *n* before *t* in the *endings* of the *third singular*.

Exc.—If *ī* immediately precedes *t*, it must be changed, in the fourth conjugation, into *iu* ; as, *audīt*, he hears ; *audiunt*, they hear : and in the other conjugations into *u* ; as, *amābīt*, he will love ; *amabunt*, they will love.

PARADIGM.

		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Conj. I.	{ Sing.	Am-āt,	ām-abāt,	ām-abīt.
	{ Plur.	Am-ant,	ām-abant,	ām-abunt.
II.	{ Sing.	Mōn-ēt,	mōn-ebāt,	mōn-ebīt.
	{ Plur.	Mōn-ent,	mōn-ebant,	mōn-ebunt.
III.	{ Sing.	Rēg-īt,	rēg-ebāt,	rēg-ēt.
	{ Plur.	Rēg-unt,	rēg-ebant,	rēg-ent.
IV.	{ Sing.	Aud-īt,	aud-iebāt,	aud-iēt.
	{ Plur.	Aud-iunt,	aud-iebant,	aud-ient.

36. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(b) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing. 4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

LESSON VIII.*Nouns.—Nominative Case.*

37. IN Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns*; as, *Cæsar*, *puer*, a boy, &c.

REM. 1.—Names of *individual* persons or objects are called *proper nouns*; as, *Cæsar*; *Römā*, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as *individuals*, but as *members of a class*, are called *common nouns*; as, *equus*, a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have *gender, number, person, and case*.

39. The *Gender* of a noun is either *masculine, feminine, common, or neuter*.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

1) *Masculine*, when they denote *male* beings; as, *hōmīnēs*, men; *puēr*, a boy; *leōnēs*, lions.

2) *Feminine*, when they denote *female* beings; as, *mūliēr*, a woman; *puellā*, a girl; *leōnā*, a lioness.

3) *Common*, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, *pārens*, a parent (either *male* or *female*); *testīs*, a witness (either *male* or *female*).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called *natural gender*.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (*neuter in English*), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called *grammatical gender*.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined *partly* by their *signification*, but *principally* by their *endings*.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

- 1) Most names of *rivers, winds, and months* are masculine; as, *Rhēnūs*, the Rhine; *austēr*, the south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.
- 2) Most names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* are feminine; as *Ægyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Delōs*, name of an island; *laurūs*, the laurel-tree.
- 3) *Indeclinable nouns*,* and *clauses used as nouns*, are neuter; as, *fās*, right; *nihīl*, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The *Numbers* and *Persons* are the same in Latin as in English. The *first* person denotes the *speaker*; the *second*, the *person spoken to*; and the *third*, the *person spoken of*. The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The *Cases* of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension*.

48. The *Nominative Case* corresponds to the *nominative* in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

Puēr lūdīt, the boy plays.

49. RULE OF SYNTAX.†—The subject of a finite (i.e. not infinitive) verb is put in the nominative.

REM. 1.—Thus, in the example, *puēr* is in the nominative by this rule.

REM. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

* Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

† Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules of Syntaz*.

50. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in *number* and *person*.

REM.—Thus, in the above example, *lūdīt* is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject *puēr*.

37 Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have *natural* gender, and which *grammatical*, and apply rules.

51. VOCABULARY.*

Caesār, <i>m.</i>	Caesar, <i>a celebrated Roman general.</i>	
Filiūs, <i>m.</i>	son	(<i>filial</i>).
Pātēr, <i>m.</i>	father	(<i>paternal</i>).
Puellā, <i>f.</i>	girl.	
Puēr, <i>m.</i>	boy	(<i>puerile</i>).
Vincērē,	to conquer,	(<i>vincible</i>).

52. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puer veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.

(b) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

* Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *c.* for *common*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

† As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, *pātēr*, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, *pātēr*, a father: (3) with the definite article; as, *pātēr*, the father.

LESSON IX.

Nouns.—Nominative Case—Continued.

53. VOCABULARY.*

Aquā, <i>f.</i>	water	(<i>aqueous</i>).
Aquilā, <i>f.</i>	eagle	(<i>aquiline</i>).
Avīs, <i>f.</i>	bird.	
Cānis, <i>c.</i>	dog	(<i>canine</i>).
Equūs, <i>m.</i>	horse	(<i>equestrian</i>).
Filiā, <i>f.</i>	daughter	(<i>filial</i>).
Fluērē,	to flow	(<i>fluent</i>).
Hostis, <i>c.</i>	enemy	(<i>hostile</i>).
Impērārē	to command	(<i>imperative</i>).
Māgistēr,	master, teacher	(<i>magisterial</i>).
Mātēr,	mother	(<i>maternal</i>).
Mors, <i>f.</i>	death	(<i>mortal</i>).
Nubēs, <i>f.</i>	cloud.	
Rex,	king	(<i>regal</i>).
Servūs, <i>m.</i>	slave	(<i>servant</i>).
Vōlārē,	to fly	(<i>volatile</i>).

54. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquila volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(b) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

* In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming. 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

LESSON X.

Nouns.—Vocative Case.

55. THE same form* of the noun which is called the *nominative*, when *spoken of*, is called the *vocative*, when *spoken to*. This corresponds to the *nominative independent* in English; e. g.

<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>
Păter,	puer cader.
Father (or, <i>O father</i>),	the boy will fall.

REM.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

REM.—The interjection *O* is sometimes used before the name addressed, both in Latin and English.

57. VOCABULARY.

Agricolă,	husbandman	(agriculture).
Balbă,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caius,	Caius, a man's name.	
Discipulus,	pupil	(disciple).
Mordere,	to bite.	

* A single exception will be noticed in another place.

O (*interj.*),

Peccărē,

Rēgīnā,

Sōrōr,

O, *used in direct address.*

to sin

queen.

sister.

(*peccant*).58. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer jurat. 2. *O mater*, puer jurat. 3. Puer
 udēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, *magister*. 5. Rex saltābat.
 6. *O regīna*, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. *Soror*,
 mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. *O puer*, canis
 mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat. 13. Jurābunt.
 14. Agricōla arābit. 15. Arant. 16. Servus peccat.
 17. Peccābant. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis
 vincet. 20. Vincēbant. 21. Scient. 22. Discēbant.
 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes mo-
 vet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(b) 1. The king will conquer. 2. *O queen*, the king
 will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. *Father*,
 the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (*swears*).
 6. *Master*, the boy is swearing (*swears*). 7. The dog
 will bite. 8. *Brother*, the dog will bite. 9. They will
 dance. 10. *Mother*, they will dance. 11. The master
 will hear. 12. *Sister*, the master will hear. 13. The
 horse will run. 14. *Daughter*, the horse will run. 15.
 Death will come. 16. Death will come, *O king*.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19.
 Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The
 girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil
 will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen
 is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were read-
 ing. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will
 command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king
 is conquering. 32. The father will come.

LESSON XI.

Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.

59. THE subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

1. Lătīnūs rēgnābāt. 2. Lătīnūs rex rēgnābāt.
 Latinus was reigning. Latinus *the king* was reigning.

REM. 1.—*Rex*, in the above example, limits Lătīnūs; i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābāt* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name Latinus, but only of Latinus *the king*. *Rex* is in the same case as the subject, i. e. *nominative*, and is said to be in *apposition* with it.

REM. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is *emphatic*, it is placed before that noun.

60. VOCABULARY.

Aurūm,	gold.	
Crescērē,	{ to grow,	{ (crescent).
	{ to wax (as moon) }	
Faustūlūs,	Faustulus, an Italian shepherd.	
Lătīnūs,	Latinus, a king of Latium.	
Lavinia,	Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.	
Lună,	moon	(lunar).
Micārē,	to glitter, to shine.	
Milēs,	soldier	(military).
Numā,	Numa, second king of Rome.	
Pastōr,	shepherd	(pastor, pastoral).

Rēgnārē,	to reign	(<i>regnant, reign</i>).
Tullia,	Tullia,	
	<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	
Victoriā,	Victoria,	
	<i>queen of England.</i>	

61. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus *servus* dormit. 3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus *rex* vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia *regīna* saltābit. 7. Caius *pastor* cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia *regīna* regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(b) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. *King* Numa was reigning. 3. Faustus a *shepherd* was singing. 4. *Queen* Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing. 7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9. They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11. The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning. 13. They will spin. 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

LESSON XII.

Nouns.—Genitive Case.—Modified Subject.

62. NOUNS in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

GENITIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	i,	is,	us,	ei.*

EXAMPLES.

	Nominative.	Genitive.
Dec. I.	Mūsā, <i>a muse,</i>	mūsae, <i>of a muse.</i>
II.	Servūs, <i>a slave,</i>	servī, <i>of a slave.</i>
III.	Hōnōr, <i>an honor,</i>	hōnōris, <i>of an honor.</i>
IV.	Fructūs, <i>a fruit,</i>	fructus, <i>of a fruit.</i>
V.	Diēs, <i>a day,</i>	diēi, <i>of a day.</i>

REM.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the *nominative* and the *genitive*: accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The *Genitive Case* expresses *possession*, and the *various relations* denoted by the preposition *of*, and accordingly corresponds both to the *English Possessive*, and the *English Objective* with *of*; as, *rēgis cōrōnā*, the king's crown (or the crown of the king); *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a *different person* or *thing* connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by such noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

1. Filiūs rēgnābīt.

2. Rēgis filiūs rēgnābīt.

The son will reign.

The son *of the king* will reign.

REM.—The genitive *rēgis* (of the king), in the above example, modifies *filiūs* (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābīt*

* In this ending *e* is long except in *spēi*, *fīdēi*, and *rēi*.

(will reign) is not affirmed of *every* son, but only of the son of the king.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended, though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is *emphatic*, or is a *monosyllable*, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

1. Cicerō, *pāter* patriae.

Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.

2. Lex nātūrae.

The law of nature.

REM.—In the first example, *pāter* is emphatic, and in the second, *lex* is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the *same* case as that noun, when it denotes the *same* person or thing; e. g. *Lātinūs rex*, Latinus the king (59, REM. 1).
- 2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g. *Rēgīs filiūs*, the son of the king.

66. VOCABULARY.*

Agrīcōlā,	Gen. āgrīcōlāe,	husbandman	(<i>agriculture</i>)
Amīcūs,	“ āmīcī,	friend	(<i>amicable</i>).
Balbūs,	“ Balbī,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiūs,	“ Caiī,	Caius, a man's name.	
Cānīs,	“ cānīs,	dog	(<i>canine</i>).
Filiā,	“ filiae,	daughter.	

* The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.

Filiūs,	Gen. filii,	son	(<i>filial</i>).
Fratēr,	" fratris,	brother	(<i>fraternal</i>).
Lātinūs,	" Lātini,	Latinus,	
		<i>a king of Latium.</i>	
Milēs,	" militiā,	soldier	(<i>military</i>).
Pātēr,	" patrī,	father	(<i>paternal</i>).
Puēr,	" puēri,	boy	(<i>puerile</i>).
Rēginā,	" rēginae,	queen.	
Rex,	" rēgis,	king	(<i>regal</i>).
Servūs,	" servi,	slave	(<i>servant</i>).
Tulliā,	" Tulliae,	Tullia,	
		<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	

67. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servus dormit. 2. Balbi servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. Regis filius ludēbat. 5. Rēgināe pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia rēgināe ridēbat. 8. Amīcus regis cadet.

9. Balbus servus veniēbat. 10. Balbi servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis pastōris mordēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia pastōris nebit. 15. Regis amīcus timēbit. 16. Caius, regis amīcus, timēbit. 17. Tullia, regis filia, cantābat.

(b) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother of the king will conquer. 4. The daughter of the king is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter of the queen will read. 7. The father of Balbus was laughing.

8. The shepherd's dog (the dog of the shepherd) will bite. 9. The boy's dog will bite. 10. The husband-man's dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son of the soldier will fight. 13. Latinus the king was conquering. 14. The shepherd's daughter (the daughter of the shepherd) is spinning.

LESSON XIII. .

Nouns.—Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate.

68. EVERY noun consists of two distinct parts, viz:—

- 1) The *Root*, or that part which remains *unchanged* throughout the various cases of both numbers, as *mūs* in *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*.
- 2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*, the endings are *ā*, *ae*, and *ām*.

69. In any noun, of whatever declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62); as, *mūsā*, Gen. *mūsae*; root, *mūs*: *servūs*, Gen. *servī*; root, *serv*: *hōnōr*, Gen. *hōnōris*; root, *hōnōr*, &c.
- 2) Any *case* may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.

70. 1) The *Accusative Singular* of *neuter* nouns is the same as the *Nominative*; e. g., Nom. *sceptrūm*, a sceptre; Accus. *sceptrūm*.

- 2) The *Accusative Singular* of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns is formed from the root, by adding one* of the following

ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ām,	ūm,	ēm,	ūm,	ēm.

* If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension; if of the second, the ending given for the second; and so on.

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root. Ending.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs -ā m; mūsām, <i>a muse</i> .	
II.	Servi, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv -ū m; servūm, <i>a slave</i> .	
III.	Hōnoris, <i>of an honor</i> ;	hōnōr -ē m; hōnōrēm, <i>an honor</i> .	
IV.	Fructus, <i>of a fruit</i> ;	fruct -ū m; fructūm, <i>a fruit</i> .	
V.	Diēi, <i>of a day</i> ;	di -ē m; diēm, <i>a day</i> .	

71. The accusative case corresponds very nearly to the English objective, and is used after *transitive verbs* and *certain prepositions*.

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be *transitive*; and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its *direct object*; e. g.

Serviūs *impēriūm* administrāt.

(*Servius the government administers.*)

Servius administers the government.

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, *government* is placed after *administers*; but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, *impēriūm* precedes *administrāt*.

74. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *Direct Object* of an action is put in the *accusative*.

75. VOCABULARY.

Aedificārē,		to build	(<i>edifice</i>).
Diēs,	Gen. diēi,	day.	
Dōmīnūs,	“ dōmīni,	master, as owner	(<i>domineer</i>).
Epistolā,	“ epistolae, f.	letter	(<i>epistle</i>).
Laudārē,		to praise	(<i>laud</i>).
Monstrārē,		to show.	
Mors,	“ mortis, f.	death	(<i>mortal</i>).

Mūrūs,	Gen. mūrī, m.	wall	(<i>mural</i>).
Occidērē,		to kill.	
Puellā,	" puellae,	girl.	
Sēnatūs,	" sēnatūs, m.	senate	(<i>senate</i>).
Sperārē,		to hope for.	
Terrērē,		to terrify.	
Timērē,		to fear	(<i>timid</i>).
Viā,	" viae, f.	way, road.	
Vidērē,		to see.	
Vitarē,		to shun.	

76. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius *puellam* laudat. 2. Puer *murum* aedificabat. 3. Rex *puerum* ridet. 4. Puer *mortem* vitat. 5. Puella *diem* sperabat. 6. Puella *viam* monstrabit. 7. Servus *dominum* occidit.

8. Puella *puerum* laudat. 9. Rex *senatum* timet. 10. Puer *canem* timēbit. 11. Epistolam scribit. 12. Puer *canem* occidebat. 13. *Mortem* vitant. 14. *Mortem* timent. 15. Balbus servus *dominum* timēbit. 16. Balbus *servum* docent. 17. Balbi *filius* *puerum* laudabat.

(b) 1. The boy will show *the road*. 2. Balbus is building *a wall*. 3. Caius was praising *the boy*. 4. The slave is showing *the way*. 5. The king hopes for *the day*. 6. The girl will shun *the dog*.

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.

77. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Certain qualifying words, called *adverbs*, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

1. *Mīlēs fortītēr pūgnāt.* 2. *Mīlēs nōn pūgnāt.*
 (*The soldier bravely fights.*) (*The soldier not fights.*)
 The soldier fights *bravely*. The soldier *does not* fight.

REM.—In these examples, *fortītēr* (bravely) and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnāt*. In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

78. VOCABULARY.*

Anguīs, anguīs, c.	snake, serpent.	
Christianūs, i, m.	Christian	(<i>Christian</i>).
Fortītēr,	bravely.	
Lex, lēgis, f.	law	(<i>legal</i>).
Matēr, matrīs,	mother	(<i>maternal</i>).
Nēglīgērē,	to disregard	(<i>neglect</i>).
Nōn,	not.	
Pastōr, pastōris,	shepherd	(<i>pastor</i>).
Pēcūniā, ae, f.	money	(<i>pecuniary</i>).
Serviūs, i,	Servius, a man's name.	
Vox, vocīs, f.	voice	(<i>vocal</i>).

79. Exercises.

- (a) 1. *Servius pūgnat.* 2. *Servius fortītēr pūgnat.*
 3. *Mors Christiānum non† terret.* 4. *Agricōla anguem timēbit.*
 5. *Agricōla anguem non timēbit.* 6. *Pater*

* In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

† In translating *nōn* before a verb, place 'not' after the English tense-sign; thus, *nōn terrēt*, *does not terrify*, or *is not terrifying*.

filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem negliget. 9. Mater filiae vocem *non* negliget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam negliget. 12. Pecuniam negligent. 13. Puērum docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(b) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will *not* fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does *not* fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will *not* bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate.

80. THE *Dative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *to* or *for* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; *Dat. mūsae*, *to* or *for* a muse.

81. The *Dative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

DATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ō,	i,	ui,*	ei.†

* Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the *dative singular* like the *nominative*.

† In this ending *e* is long except in *spēi*, *fidēi*, and *rēi*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Ending.</i>	<i>Dative.</i>
Dec. I. Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ; mūs	- ae;	mūsae, <i>to or for a muse.</i>	
II. Servi, <i>of a slave</i> ; serv	- ō;	servō, " " <i>a slave.</i>	
III. Hōnōris, <i>of honor</i> ; hōnōr	- i;	hōnōrī, " " <i>an honor.</i>	
IV. Fructūs, <i>of fruit</i> ; fruct	- uī;	fructuī, " " <i>a fruit.</i>	
V. Diēi, <i>of day</i> ; di	- ei;	diēī, " " <i>a day.</i>	

82. The person or thing *to or for which* any thing is, or is done, is called an *indirect object*; e. g.,

Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt.

(Balbus to the boy the way shows.)

Balbus shows the way to the boy.

REM.—In the example it will be observed that the *indirect object* precedes the *direct*. This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the *accusative* of the *direct* object and the *dative* of the *indirect* object.

84. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē,	to accuse.	
Bellūm, i, n.	war.	
Claudērē,	to shut	(close).
Condērē,	to found, to build.	
Dārē,*	to give.	
Dŏmūs, dŏmūs, or dŏmā, f.	house	(domestic).
Evertērē,	to pull down, to overthrow.	
Indicērē,	to declare (as war).	
Leō, leōnis, m.	lion.	
Milēs, itis, m. (rarely f.),	soldier	(military).

* Dārē is of the first conjugation, with ā short, contrary to the general rule.

Portă, ae, f.	gate	{ (<i>portal</i>).
		{ (<i>porter</i>).
Răpăriră,	to find.	
Romulus, I,	Romulus,	
	<i>the founder of Rome.</i>	
Sceptrum, I, n.	sceptre.	
Urbs, is, f.	city	(<i>urbane</i>).

85. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor *puero* viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrabit. 4. Puer *pastori* viam monstrabit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus *regi* portam claudet.

7. Romulus urbem condēbat. 8. Agricola anguem repērit. 9. Miles agricolae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidēbant. 11. Militi viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timēbant.

(b) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall *for the king*. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road *to the husbandman*. 5. The husbandman is showing the road *to the boy*. 6. They will declare war *against the city*.

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accuse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (*his*) son.

LESSON XVI.

Nouns.—Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate.

86. THE *Ablative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *from*, *by*, *in*, or *with* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Abl. *mūsā*, from a muse, or *by*, *in*, or *with* a muse.*

87. The *Ablative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
a,	ō,	ē,†	ū,	ē.

EXAMPLES.

Genitive.	Root.	Ending.	Ablative.
Dec. I. <i>Mūsae</i> , of a muse;	<i>mūs</i>	- a;	<i>mūsā</i> , from, in, &c., a muse.
II. <i>Servi</i> , of a slave;	<i>serv</i>	- ō; servō,	" " " a slave.
III. <i>Hōnōris</i> , of honor;	<i>hōnōr</i>	- ē; hōnōrē,	" " " honor.
IV. <i>Fructūs</i> , of fruit;	<i>fruct</i>	- ū; fructū,	" " " fruit.
V. <i>Diei</i> , of day;	<i>di</i>	- ē; diē,	" " " day.

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *time* of an action; e. g.,

Hīemē ursūs dormīt.

(*In winter the bear sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (when?) *in winter*.

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time *when* is put in the

* The preposition *is*, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

† As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in *ī*, as we shall see by-and-by.

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English *at, in, &c.*)

REM.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.


90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *place* of its action; e. g.,

Ursus *in antrō* dormit.

(*The bear in a cave sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (where?) *in a cave.*

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

 The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the *order* in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

92. VOCABULARY.

Aestas, atis, <i>f.</i>	summer.	
Agēr, agrī, <i>m.</i>	field	(<i>agriculture</i>).
Antrūm, I, <i>n.</i>	cave.	
Asinūs, I, <i>m.</i>	ass.	
Avis, is, <i>f.</i>	bird	(<i>aviary</i>).
Dilaniarē,	to tear in pieces.	
Equūs, I, <i>m.</i>	horse	(<i>equestrian</i>).
Hiems, emīs, <i>f.</i>	winter.	
Hortūs, I, <i>m.</i>	garden	(<i>horticulture</i>).
In (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	in.	
Lūcūs, I, <i>m.</i>	grove.	
Mons, tis, <i>m.</i>	mountain.	
Prātūm, I, <i>n.</i>	meadow.	
Ursūs, I, <i>m.</i>	bear.	

93. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus *in antro* dormit. 3. Canis currit. 4. Canis *in horto* currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer *in agro* ludēbat. 7. Hiēme ursus *in*

antro dormiet. 8. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 9. Romŭlus urbem *in monte* condēbat. 10. *Hiēme* ursus *in antro* dormit.

11. Servus regem occidet. 12. Leo aſinum dilaniat. 13. Rex reginam accusabat. 14. Regina filiam docēbit. 15. In luco ludunt. 16. Leo equum dilaniabit.

(b) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing *in the garden*. 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running *in the meadow*. 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing *in winter*. 7. The daughter was singing *in the grove*. 8. They will walk *in the field*. 9. They will play *in summer*.

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking *in the field*. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

LESSON XVII.

*Nouns.—First Declension.**

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in *ae* (62). They all end in *ā* (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their *signification*, according to previous rules (40, 44).

* Having learned in the previous Lessons the use of the *several cases* of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the *five declensions* (62) in all the cases of *both numbers*.

96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may also be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

- 1) The root may be found by dropping the nominative ending *ă*, as *mūsă*; root, *mūs* (69, 1).
- 2) Any noun may be declined (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă,
Plur.	ae,	arŭm,	is,	as,	ae,	is.

PARADIGM.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>Mūs-ă, a muse.</i>	Nom.	<i>Mūs-ae, muses.</i>
Gen.	<i>Mūs-ae, of a muse.</i>	Gen.	<i>Mūs-arŭm, of muses.</i>
Dat.	<i>Mūs-ae, to, for a muse.</i>	Dat.	<i>Mūs-is, to, for muses.</i>
Acc.	<i>Mūs-ăm, a muse.</i>	Acc.	<i>Mūs-as, muses.</i>
Voc.	<i>Mūs-ă, O muse.</i>	Voc.	<i>Mūs-ae, O muses.</i>
Abl.	<i>Mūs-ă, from, &c. a muse.</i>	Abl.	<i>Mūs-is, from, &c. muses.</i>

98. VOCABULARY.*

Apërîrë,	to open, to uncover	(<i>aperture</i>).
Aquilă, ae,	eagle	(<i>aquiline</i>).
Căpăt, itis, n.	head	(<i>capital</i>).
Columbă, ae,	dove.	

* The pupil must apply rules for gender.

Cōrōnā, ae,	garland, crown	(coronation).
Dōlōr, ōris, m.	pain, grief, sorrow	(dolorous).
Lusciniā, ae,	nightingale.	
Ridēre,	{ to laugh, }	(ridicule)
	{ to laugh at }	
Sentire,	{ to feel, to perceive }	
	{ by the senses.	
Vincire,	{ to bind, }	
	{ to bind up.	

99. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puellae saltant. 2. Aquilae volant. 3. Regina puellas docēbit. 4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt. 5. Tulliae filias ridēbit. 6. Aquila columbas occidet. 7. Luscinae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistōlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vinciēbat. 13. Regina puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regina puellis corōnas dabit.

(b) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tullia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husband-man will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension.—Nouns in ūs and ūm.

100. To the *Second Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in ī (62). They end in ūs, ūm, ěr, and ěr (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in ūm are grammatically *neuter*; and the *rest* (with a few exceptions*) are grammatically *masculine*; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in ūs and ūm, of this declension, the *root* is found by dropping the *nominative ending*; as, *serv-ūs*, a slave; root, *serv*: *rēgn-ūm*, a kingdom; root, *rēgn*.

103. Nouns in ūs are declined by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūs,	ī,	ō,	ūm,	ě,†	ō,
Plur.	ī,	ōrūm,	īs,	ōs,	ī,	īs.

* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with *lists* of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, *general rules*, covering the great majority of cases, are given for *immediate* and *constant use*; thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether pertaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the *Vocabularies*.

† The vocative singular, in nouns in ūs of this declension, is not like the nominative (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in *ūs* drop the ending ō in the vocative singular; as, *Tullius* (proper name), Voc. *Tullī*. *Filius*, a son, and *geniūs*, a guardian angel, also drop the ending ō in the vocative singular.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Serv-ūs, <i>a slave.</i>	Nom. Serv-I, <i>slaves.</i>
Gen. Serv-I, <i>of a slave.</i>	Gen. Serv-ōrūm, <i>of slaves.</i>
Dat. Serv-ō, <i>to, for a slave.</i>	Dat. Serv-Is, <i>to, for slaves.</i>
Acc. Serv-ūm, <i>a slave.</i>	Acc. Serv-ōs, <i>slaves.</i>
Voc. Serv-ě, <i>O slave.</i>	Voc. Serv-I, <i>O slaves.</i>
Abl. Serv-ō, <i>from, by a slave.</i>	Abl. Serv-Is, <i>from, by slaves.</i>

REM.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in *ūm* are declined by adding to the root the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūm,	I,	ō,	ūm,	ūm,	ō,
Plur.	ā,	ōrūm,	Is,	ā,	ā,	Is.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Nom. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen. Rēgn-I, <i>of a kingdom.</i>	Gen. Rēgn-ōrūm, <i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat. Rēgn-ō, <i>to, for a kingdom.</i>	Dat. Rēgn-Is, <i>to, for kingdoms.</i>
Acc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Acc. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>O kingdom.</i>	Voc. Rēgn-ā, <i>O kingdoms.</i>
Abl. Rēgn-ō, <i>from, by a kingdom.</i>	Abl. Rēgn-Is, <i>from, by kingdoms.</i>

REM. 1.—In neuters of all declensions, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* are alike in each number, and in the plural end in *ā*, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ūm* are declined like masculines in *ūs* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (*nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.*). Compare paradigms.

105. VOCABULARY.

Agnūs, I,	lamb.	
Discipŭlūs, I,	pupil	(disciple).
Dōmīnūs, I,	master, as owner	(domineer).
Gērērē,	{ to carry on, to wage (as war).	
Haedūs, I,		kid.
Lŭpūs, I,	wolf.	
Māgistēr, trī,	master, as teacher	(magisteria.).

106. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domīnum occīdet. 4. Servi domīnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domīni filios timet. 7. Servi dominōrum filios timēbunt.

8. Puellae dōlōrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiābus* haedum dabit.

(b) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids.

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

* Filiā has the dative and ablative plur. in *abūs*, to distinguish it from the same cases of *filiūs*.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in ěr and ĭr.

107. NOUNS in ěr and ĭr, of the second declension, have the *nominative* and *vocative singular* alike, and in all the other cases are declined like *servŭs* (103), with the single exception that most nouns in ěr drop ě in the root.

PARADIGMS.

1. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law : root, gĕnĕr (ě not dropped).

Singular.

Nom. Gĕnĕr, *a son-in-law.*
 Gen. Gĕnĕr-I, *of son-in-law.*
 Dat. Gĕnĕr-ĕ, *to son-in-law.*
 Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŭm, *son-in-law.*
 Voc. Gĕnĕr, *O son-in-law.*
 Abl. Gĕnĕr-ĕ, *from son-in-law.*

Plural.

Nom. Gĕnĕr-I, *sons-in-law.*
 Gen. Gĕnĕr-ĕrum, *of sons-in-law.*
 Dat. Gĕnĕr-Is, *to sons-in-law.*
 Acc. Gĕnĕr-ĕs, *sons-in-law.*
 Voc. Gĕnĕr-I, *O sons-in-law.*
 Abl. Gĕnĕr-Is, *from sons-in-law.*


2. Agĕr, a field : root, āgr (ě dropped).

Singular.

Nom. Agĕr, *a field.*
 Gen. Agr-I, *of a field.*
 Dat. Agr-ĕ, *to a field.*
 Acc. Agr-ŭm, *a field.*
 Voc. Agĕr, *O field.*
 Abl. Agr-ĕ, *from a field.*

Plural.

Nom. Agr-I, *fields.*
 Gen. Agr-ĕrŭm, *of fields.*
 Dat. Agr-Is, *to fields.*
 Acc. Agr-ĕs, *fields.*
 Voc. Agr-I, *O fields.*
 Abl. Agr-Is, *from fields.*

 Vĭr (*a man*) and its compounds are the only nouns in ĭr, and are declined like gĕnĕr.

108. VOCABULARY.

Armĭgĕr, ĭ,
 Dilĭgentiā, ae,
 Gĕnĕr, ĭ,
 Libĕr, lĭbri,
 Vulpĕs, ĭs, f.

armor-bearer.
 diligence.
 son-in-law.
 book.
 fox.

Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludēbant. 3. Magister puēros docēbit. 4. Magistri discipulos docēbunt. 5. Magister puēris libros dabit. 6. Armigērum occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, b) filiōrum laudābat. 8. Regīnae filia in luco ambulābat. 9. Lusciniæ in lucis cantant. 10. Magistri legem non negligent. 11. Puēri vulpem non occident.

(b) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

LESSON XX.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

110. THE *Adjective* is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, *bōnūs*, good; *māgnūs*, great.

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies;

e. g., *Bōnūs puēr*, a good boy; *Bōnā puellā*, a good girl; and *Bōnūm rēgnūm*, a good kingdom. Thus, *bōnūs* is the form of the adjective when used with *masc.* nouns, *bōnā* with *fem.*, and *bōnūm* with *neuter*.

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like *servūs* (103), and is accordingly of the *second* declension; the feminine like *mūsā* (97), and is of the *first* declension; and the neuter like *rēgnūm* (104), and is of the *second* declension.

PARADIGM.

Bōnūs, good.			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ūs,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Gen.	Bōn-i,	bōn-ae,	bōn-i.
Dat.	Bōn-o,	bōn-ae,	bōn-o.
Acc.	Bōn-ūm,	bōn-ām,	bōn-ūm.
Voc.	Bōn-ē,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Abl.	Bōn-o,	bōn-ā,	bōn-o.
PLURAL.			
Nom.	Bōn-i,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Gen.	Bōn-ōrūm,	bōn-ārūm,	bōn-ōrūm.
Dat.	Bōn-is,	bōn-is,	bōn-is.
Acc.	Bōn-os,	bōn-as,	bōn-ā.
Voc.	Bōn-i,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Abl.	Bōn-is,	bōn-is,	bōn-is.

REM.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the *First* and *Second Declension*, because they are declined like nouns of these declensions; the *masc.* and *neut.* being declined like nouns of the second declension, and the *fem.* like those of the first.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the *nom.* and *voc. sing.* in *ēr*, like nouns in *ēr* of the second declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

clined like *bönus* in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop *ě* before *r* of the root in all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Těněr, tender : root, *těněr* (*ě* not dropped).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-üm.
Gen.	Těněr-I,	těněr-ae,	těněr-I.
Dat.	Těněr-o,	těněr-ae,	těněr-o.
Acc.	Těněr-üm,	těněr-äm,	těněr-üm.
Voc.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-üm.
Abl.	Těněr-o,	těněr-a,	těněr-o.

FLURAL.

Nom.	Těněr-I,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Gen.	Těněr-örüm,	těněr-ärüm,	těněr-örum.
Dat.	Těněr-Is,	těněr-Is,	těněr-Is.
Acc.	Těněr-os,	těněr-as,	těněr-ă.
Voc.	Těněr-I,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Abl.	Těněr-Is,	těněr-Is,	těněr-Is.

2. Aegër, sick : root, *aegr* (*ě* dropped).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Aegër,	aegr-ă,	aegr-üm.
Gen.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-I.
Dat.	Aegr-o,	aegr-ae,	aegr-o.
Acc.	Aegr-üm,	aegr-äm,	aegr-üm.
Voc.	Aegër,	aegr-ă,	aegr-üm.
Abl.	Aegr-o,	aegr-a,	aegr-o.

FLURAL.

Nom.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Gen.	Aegr-örüm,	aegr-ärüm,	aegr-örüm.
Dat.	Aegr-Is,	aegr-Is,	aegr-Is.
Acc.	Aegr-os,	aegr-as,	aegr-ă.
Voc.	Aegr-I,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Abl.	Aegr-Is,	aegr-Is,	aegr-Is.

REM.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *tūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *t* in all genders, viz.: *aliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *solūs*, alone; *totūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *altēr*, the other; *neutēr*, neither; and *utēr*, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*; e. g.,

Mātēr bōnām filiām laudāt.

(The mother (her) good daughter praises).

The mother praises her good daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective *bōnām* is in the *feminine accusative singular*, to agree with its noun *filiām*.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon *emphasis*; and accordingly the adjective *precedes* or *follows* its noun, according as it is or is not emphatic. In the example, *bōnām* is emphatic.

REM. 3.—*Meūs*, my; *tuūs*, your (or thy); *suūs*, his, her, &c., though called *adjective pronouns* (273 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns: e. g.,

Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt.

(The woman maid her awakens).*

The woman awakens her maid.

115. VOCABULARY.

Bēnignūs, ā, ūm,	kind	(benign).
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.	
Magnūs, ā, ūm,	large, great	(magnitude).
Meūs,* ā, ūm,	my.	
Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm,	beautiful.	
Sēpēlirē,	to bury.	
Stūdiosūs, ā, ūm,	studious.	
Suūs,† ā, um,	his, her, its, their.	
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	your, thy.	

* Voc. sing. masc. is *mī*.

† The meaning of this word depends in part upon the *gender* and *number* of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the

116. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Regīna puēros laudābat. 2. Regīna puēros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium suum* docēbat. 4. Mater filias suas amābit. 5. Bona mater filias suas amābit.

6. Magister puēros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiōsos puēros docēbit. 8. Agricōlae anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non negliget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non negligunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambūlat.

(b) 1. The father was burying *his** son. 2. They are burying *their** sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.

6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf. 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

LESSON XXI

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continued.

117. THE noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word *man* must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; *woman*, if fem. sing.; and *thing*, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

above example (*Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt*), *suām* means *her*, because the subject *mūliēr* is *fem. sing.*; with a masculine subject it would mean *his*, and with a plural subject, *their*, &c.

Avārūs pēcūniām āmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money loves.*)

The avaricious man loves money.

REM.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, *avarī* may be translated *avaricious men*, or simply *the avaricious*.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

1. Māgnā rēgis cōrōnā.

(*The great of the king crown.*)

The king's great crown.

2. Māgnā bōnī rēgis cōrōnā.

(*The great of the good king crown.*)

The good king's great crown.

119. VOCABULARY.

Aureūs, ā, ūm,	golden.
Avāritiā, ae,	avarice.
Avārūs, ā, ūm,	avaricious.
Impiūs, ā, ūm,	impious.
Indoctūs, ā, ūm,	unlearned.
Lābōr, ōris, m.	labor.
Poētā, ae, m.	poet.
Sāpientiā, ae,	wisdom.
Vindicārē	to avenge.



120. Exercises.

(a) 1. Auream regis corōnam vidēbant. 2. Servi magnam regis corōnam vidēbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertēbant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.

6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9. Mater bonas filias laudābat.

—(b) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will *laugh at* the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

LESSON XXII.

Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.

121. THE predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting *price, value, or degree of estimation*; e. g.,

1. Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt.

(*The avaricious (man) (his) country for gold will sell.*)

The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestīmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money at a great (price) values.*)

The avaricious man values money at a great price (or highly).

122. RULE OF SYNTAX.—*Price*, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—In example 1. the noun *aurō* is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective *māgnī* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

123. VOCABULARY.

Aestimarē,	to value	(estimate).
Aurūm, i,	gold.	
Magnī,	{ at a great price, at a high price.	
Magnī aestimarē,	{ to prize highly, to think highly of.	
Parvī,	{ at a little price, at a low price.	
Parvī aestimarē,	to think little of.	
Pātriā, ae,	native country	(patriotic).
Proditōr, ōris,	traitor.	
Vendērē,	to sell	(vend).
Vērūs, ō, ūm,	true, real.	
Virtūs, utis, f.	virtue.	

124. Exercises.

(a) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat. 2. Proditōr patriam *parvī*² aestimābit. 3. Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvī* aestīmat. 4. Boni virtūtem *magnī*² aestīmant.

5. Rex servum *magnī* aestimābit. 6. Regīna aurēam corōnam *magnī* aestīmat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domīnus servi sui epistōlas aperiet. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold. 2. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*.² 3. The master thinks *little*² of the labor of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue *at a low (price)*.² 7. The avaricious value money *at a high (price)*.² 8. Christians think *little*² of money.

X

LESSON XXIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *īs*. They end in *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*, and may be divided into four classes:

- 1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, *mūlġēr*, a woman; root, *mūlġēr*.
- 2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.
- 3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*.
- 4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*.

126. CLASS I.—This class comprises nouns in *c,* l, n, r, t, and y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pătēr*, a father; root, *pătr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ġn* generally change *ġ* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *flūmġn*, a river; root, *flūmĩn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *căpūt*, a head; root, *căpĩt*.

* There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	is,	I,	—	—	ē (ī).
Plur.	ā (iā),	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ībūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Căpūt, <i>n.</i> , a head. (root, căpūt [126, 3].)		2. Anîmāl, <i>n.</i> , an animal. (root, same as nom.* [126].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ā.	Nom. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iā.
Gen. Căpīt-is,	Căpīt-ūm.	Gen. Anîmāl-is,	Anîmāl-iūm.
Dat. Căpīt-I,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Dat. Anîmāl-I,	Anîmāl-ībūs.
Acc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ā.	Acc. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iā.
Voc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ā.	Voc. Anîmāl,	Anîmāl-iā.
Abl. Căpīt-ē,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Abl. Anîmāl-I,	Anîmāl-ībūs.

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ab.</i>
Sing.	—	is,	- I,	ēm (im),	—	ē (ī).
Plur.	ēs,	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ībūs.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

PARADIGMS.

1. Lăbör, <i>m., labor.</i>		2. Mülïēr, <i>f., a woman.</i>	
(root, <i>same as nom.*</i> [126].)		(root, <i>same as nom.</i> [126].)	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Nom. Mülïēr,	Mülïēr-ēs.
Gen. Lăbör-ïs,	Lăbör-üm.	Gen. Mülïēr-ïs,	Mülïēr-üm.
Dat. Lăbör-I,	Lăbör-ibūs.	Dat. Mülïēr-I,	Mülïēr-ibūs.
Acc. Lăbör-ēm,	Lăbör-ēs.	Acc. Mülïēr-ēm,	Mülïēr-ēs.
Voc. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Voc. Mülïēr,	Mülïēr-ēs.
Abl. Lăbör-ē,	Lăbör-ibūs.	Abl. Mülïēr-ē,	Mülïēr-ibūs.

3. Pătër, <i>a father.</i>		4. Frătër, <i>a brother.</i>	
(root, <i>patr</i> [126, 1].)		(root, <i>fratr</i> [126, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Nom. Frătër,	Fratr-ēs.
Gen. Pătr-ïs,	Pătr-üm.	Gen. Fratr-ïs,	Fratr-üm.
Dat. Pătr-I,	Pătr-ibūs.	Dat. Fratr-I,	Fratr-ibūs.
Acc. Pătr-ēm,	Pătr-ēs.	Acc. Fratr-ēm,	Fratr-ēs.
Voc. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Voc. Frătër,	Fratr-ēs.
Abl. Pătr-ē,	Pătr-ibūs.	Abl. Fratr-ē,	Fratr-ibūs.

129. VOCABULARY.

Brütüs, *l*,
 Caecüs, ä, üm,
 Consül, *is*,
 Fînirë,
 Frătër, trîs,
 Lucërë,
 Mülïēr, ëris,
 Sënätör, öris,
 Sîrën, *is, f*.
 Söl, *is, m*.
 Sörör, öris,

Brutus, *a Roman consul.*
 blind.
 consul, *Roman chief magistrate.*
 to finish.
 brother.
 to shine.
 woman.
 senator.
 siren.
 sun.
 sister.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

130. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat. 2. Mulier sorōres accusābit. 3. Brutum consūlem occidēbat. 4. Senatōres Caesārem occidēbant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capīta aperiēbant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Caeci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestimant.

(b) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog *at a high (price)*.² 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

LESSON XXIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.

131. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*: as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.

2) Nouns in *o* add *n*: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root. as *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Poēma, *n.*, a poem: root, *poēmāt* (131, 1).*Singular.*

N. Poēmā,
G. Poēmāt-īs,
D. Poēmāt-I,
A. Poēmā,
V. Poēmā,
A. Poēmāt-ē,

Plural.

N. Poēmāt-ā.
G. Poēmāt-ūm.
D. Poēmāt-ībūs, or *īs*.*
A. Poēmāt-ā.
V. Poēmāt-ā.
A. Poēmāt-ībūs, or *īs*.*

2. Sermō, *m.*, a discourse.(root, *sermōn* [131, 2].)*Singular.* *Plural.*

N. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.
G. Sermōn-īs, Sermōn-ūm.
D. Sermōn-I, Sermōn-ībūs.
A. Sermōn-ēm, Sermōn-ēs.
V. Sermō, Sermōn-ēs.
A. Sermōn-ē, Sermōn-ībūs.

3. Virgō, *f.*, a virgin.(root, *virgīn* [131, 2. REM. 2].)*Singular.* *Plural.*

N. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.
G. Virgīn-īs, Virgīn-ūm.
D. Virgīn-I, Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Virgīn-ēm, Virgīn-ēs.
V. Virgō, Virgīn-ēs.
A. Virgīn-ē, Virgīn-ībūs.

132. VOCABULARY.

Accipitēr, trīs, *m.*

hawk.

Hōmō, inīs,

man.

Optiō, onīs, *f.*

choice

(optional).

Oratiō, onīs, *f.*

oration.

Oratōr, ōris,

orator.

Pavō, onīs, *m.*

peacock.

Poēmā, tīs, *n.*

poem.

Sermō, onīs, *m.*

discourse

(sermon).

Timid-ūs, ā, ūm,

timid.

Virgō, inīs,

maiden, virgin

(virgin).

* Nouns in *a* generally take the ending *īs* instead of *ībūs* in the dat. and abl. plural.

133. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater tuus poemata legēbat. 2. Poēta sermōnem tuum laudābit. 3. Timīdae puellae pavōnem timent. 4. Virgīnes homīni viam monstrābunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optiōnem dabit. 6. Puēri homīnes timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam parvi^s aestimābunt. 8. Puellae sorōres suas amant.

(b) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the poem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The orator prizes wisdom highly.^s 13. The avaricious think little^s of wisdom.

LESSON XXV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.

2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*: as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *i* (131, 1).

- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

PARADIGMS.

<p>1. <i>Urbs, f., a city.</i> (root, <i>urb</i> [134, 1].) <i>Singular. Plural.</i> N. <i>Urb-s,</i> <i>Urb-ēs.</i> G. <i>Urb-is,</i> <i>Urb-iūm.*</i> D. <i>Urb-I,</i> <i>Urb-ībūs.</i> A. <i>Urb-ēm,</i> <i>Urb-ēs.</i> V. <i>Urb-s,</i> <i>Urb-ēs.</i> A. <i>Urb-ē,</i> <i>Urb-ībūs.</i></p>	<p>2. <i>Mārē, n., a sea.</i> (root, <i>mār</i> [134, 3].) <i>Singular. Plural.</i> N. <i>Mār-ē,</i> <i>Mār-iā.†</i> G. <i>Mār-is,</i> <i>Mār-iūm.†</i> D. <i>Mār-I,</i> <i>Mār-ībūs.</i> A. <i>Mār-ē,</i> <i>Mār-iā.</i> V. <i>Mār-ē,</i> <i>Mār-iā.</i> A. <i>Mār-I,†</i> <i>Mār-ībūs.</i></p>
<p>3. <i>Arx (cs), f., a citadel.</i> (root, <i>arc</i> [134, 2].) <i>Singular. Plural.</i> N. <i>Arx,</i> <i>Arc-ēs.</i> G. <i>Arc-is,</i> <i>Arc-iūm.*</i> D. <i>Arc-I,</i> <i>Arc-ībūs.</i> A. <i>Arc-ēm,</i> <i>Arc-ēs.</i> V. <i>Arx,</i> <i>Arc-ēs.</i> A. <i>Arc-ē,</i> <i>Arc-ībūs.</i></p>	<p>4. <i>Rex (gs), m., a king.</i> (root, <i>rēg</i> [134, 2].) <i>Singular. Plural.</i> N. <i>Rex,</i> <i>Rēg-ēs.</i> G. <i>Rēg-is,</i> <i>Rēg-ūm.</i> D. <i>Rēg-I,</i> <i>Rēg-ībūs.</i> A. <i>Rēg-ēm,</i> <i>Rēg-ēs.</i> V. <i>Rex,</i> <i>Rēg-ēs.</i> A. <i>Rēg-ē,</i> <i>Rēg-ībūs.</i></p>
<p>5. <i>Hostis, c., an enemy.</i> (root, <i>host</i> [134, 3].) <i>Singular. Plural.</i> N. <i>Host-is,</i> <i>Host-ēs.</i> G. <i>Host-is,</i> <i>Host-iūm.</i> D. <i>Host-I,</i> <i>Host-ībūs.</i> A. <i>Host-ēm,</i> <i>Host-ēs.</i> V. <i>Host-is,</i> <i>Host-ēs.</i> A. <i>Host-ē,</i> <i>Host-ībūs.</i></p>	<p>6. <i>Nūbēs, f., a cloud.</i> (root, <i>nūb</i> [134, 3].) <i>Singular. Plural.</i> N. <i>Nūb-ēs,</i> <i>Nūb-ēs.</i> G. <i>Nūb-is,</i> <i>Nūb-iūm.</i> D. <i>Nūb-I,</i> <i>Nūb-ībūs.</i> A. <i>Nūb-ēm,</i> <i>Nūb-ēs.</i> V. <i>Nūb-ēs,</i> <i>Nūb-ēs.</i> A. <i>Nūb-ē,</i> <i>Nūb-ībūs.</i></p>

* Monosyllables in *s* or *x*, preceded by a consonant, have *iūm* in the genitive plural. See 141, 3.

† See 127.

135. VOCABULARY.

Arx, arcis, <i>f.</i>	citadel, tower.	
Civis, is, <i>m. and f.</i>	citizen	(civil).
Frutex, icis, <i>m.</i>	shrub.	
Grex, egis, <i>m.</i>	flock, herd	(gregarious).
Hostis, is, <i>m. and f.</i>	enemy	(hostile).
Judex, icis,	judge	(judicial).
Pax, pacis, <i>f.</i>	peace	(pacific).
Reus, i,	criminal.	
Servare,	to keep, observe	(serve)
Violare,	to violate.	

136. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius leges violabit. 2. Regina urbem conlābat. 3. Puēri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4. Pastōres arcem condent. 5. Reus judicis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusābant. 7. Consules hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem *magni*^s aestimat. 9. Boni cives pacem *magni* aestimant. 10. Filii patrem vindicābunt. 11. Servus fruticem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei judicis vocem timēbunt. 14. Proditōr patriam *parvi*^s aestimat. 15. Proditōres patriam *parvi* aestimabunt. 16. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat.

(b) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city. 4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. 15. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think *little* of ' virtue. 22. They prize money *highly*.

LESSON XXVI.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.

137. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*: *as*, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root: *as*, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *s* into *i*, before *t*, in the root: *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*: *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

PARADIGMS.

1. Cīvītās, <i>f.</i> , a state. (root, <i>civitat</i> [137, 1].)		2. Ars, <i>f.</i> , art. (root, <i>art</i> [137, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	N. Ars,	Art-ēs.
G. Cīvītāt-is,	Cīvītāt-ūm.	G. Art-is,	Art-iūm.
D. Cīvītāt-i,	Cīvītāt-ibūs.	D. Art-i,	Art-ibūs.
A. Cīvītāt-ēm,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	A. Art-ēm,	Art-ēs.
V. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	V. Ars,	Art-ēs.
A. Cīvītāt-ē,	Cīvītāt-ibūs.	A. Art-ē,	Art-ibūs.
3. Milēs, <i>c.</i> , a soldier. (root, <i>milit</i> [137, 1, REM. 2].)		4. Corpūs, <i>n.</i> , a body. (root, <i>corpōr</i> [137, 2].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Milēs,	Milit-ēs.	N. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ēs.
G. Milit-is,	Milit-ūm.	G. Corpōr-is,	Corpōr-ūm.
D. Milit-i,	Milit-ibūs.	D. Corpōr-i,	Corpōr-ibūs.
A. Milit-ēm,	Milit-ēs.	A. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ēs.
V. Milēs,	Milit-ēs.	V. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ēs.
A. Milit-ē,	Milit-ibūs.	A. Corpōr-ē,	Corpōr-ibūs.

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms*:* e. g.,

Aliquid † tempōris,	{ something of time	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ some time	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)
Multū † boni,	{ much of good	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ much good	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)
Quantū † vōluptātis,	{ how much of pleasure	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ how much pleasure	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)
Nihil stābilitātis,	{ nothing of stability	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ no stability	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)

REM.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

* These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English. A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner. See p. 275.

139. VOCABULARY.

Aliquid,	something.	
Amittēre,	to lose.	
Avaritiā, ae,	avarice.	
Civitas, atis, f.	state.	
Corpus, ōris, n.	body	} (corporal). (corporeal).
Elēphas, antiā, m.	elephant.	
Figūra, ae,	figure.	
Hāberē,	to have.	
Imprōbus, ū, ūm,	bad, wicked.	
Multum (neut. adj.),	much.	
Multum boni,	much good.	
Multum temporis,	much time.	
Nihil (indec.),	nothing.	
Perdere,	to waste	(perdition).
Quantum (neut. adj.),	how much?	
Sacerdos, ōtis, m. and f.	priest, priestess.	
Stabilitas, atis, f.	firmness, stability	(stability).
Tempus, ōris, n.	time.	
Voluptas, atis, f.	pleasure	(voluptuous).

140. Exercises.

(a) 1. Avaritia nihil habet voluptatis.⁴ 2. Multum temporis perdebat. 3. Figura nihil habet stabilitatis. 4. Imprōbi leges civitatis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puēro monstrābat.

6. Imprōbi virtutem parvi³ aestimant. 7. Milites urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdotes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipuli multum temporis perdunt. 10. Indocti multum voluptatis amittunt.

(b) 1. The boy will waste much time.⁴ 2. They will lose much pleasure. 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.

6. The priests were praising the queen. 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom *highly*.² 10. He will laugh at¹ the unlearned. 11. He is losing *much time*. 12. The unlearned lose *much pleasure*.

LESSON XXVII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.—Genitives in iŭm.—Gender.

141. It has already been mentioned (128, REM.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive plural in *iŭm* instead of *ŭm*. These are,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: as, *mārē*, *māriŭm*, *ānīmāl*, *ānīmālīŭm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.: as, *hostīs*, *hostiŭm*; *nŭbēs*, *nŭbiŭm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant: as, *urbs*, *urbiŭm*; *arx*, *arciŭm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ŭm* is sometimes used): as, *cliens*, *clientiŭm*; *cohors*, *cohortiŭm*.

REM.—The use of *iŭm* in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their *endings*, by the following

RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

- 1) *Masculines*.—Most nouns in *er*, *or*, *os* *es*, increasing in the genitive, and *o*, except *do*, *go*,

and *io*, are masculine; e. g., *āēr*, air; *hōnōr*, honor; *flōs*, a flower; *pēs* (gen. *pēdis*), a foot; *sermō*, a discourse.

2) *Feminines*.—Most nouns in *do*, *go*, *io*, *as*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *x*, and *es* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., *ārundō*, a reed; *īmāgō*, an image; *ōrātiō*, an oration; *aestās*, summer; *turrīs*, a tower; *laus*, praise; *hiems*, winter; *lex*, a law; *nūbēs* (gen. *nūbīs*), a cloud.

3) *Neuters*.—Most nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; e. g., *mārē*, a sea; *poēmā*, a poem; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, an animal; *flūmēn*, a river; *cāpūt*, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see *Table of Genders* (579).

143. VOCABULARY.

<i>Amīcūs</i> , i,*	friend	(<i>amicable</i>).
<i>Animūs</i> , i,	mind, soul.	
<i>Carpērē</i> ,	to gather, to pluck.	
<i>Flōs</i> , ōrīs,	flower	(<i>floral</i>).
<i>Ignāvūs</i> , ā, ūm,	indolent, cowardly.
<i>Magnitūdō</i> , īnīs,	greatness, size	(<i>magnitude</i>).

144. Exercises.

(a) 1. Veram anīmi magnitudīnem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Puēri *multum temporis** perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi domīnum suum vindicābunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

* Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puēri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dila-
niābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(b) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will
pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the
lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste *much*
time. 6. Your father will lose *much time.* 7. The in-
dolent lose *much pleasure.* 8. The priests are praising
the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The
king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My
friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends
will not disregard your sorrow.

LESSON XXVIII.

*Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from
each other.*

145. 1) IN any noun of the third declension, all
the cases, except the nominative and vocative
singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters),
can be readily formed from each other, by a
simple change of the endings: thus, the accu-
sative sing. *hōnōrēm* gives (by a change of end-
ing) the dat. *hōnōrī*, or the dat. and abl. plur.
hōnōrībūs, or any other case which may be
desired.

2) The *nominative* and *vocative singular* (and *acc.
sing. in neuters*) can generally be formed from
any other case, in some one of the following
ways:

a) By dropping the ending of the given case: as, *hōnōrēm*,* Nom. *hōnōr*.†

REM. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, and to a few with the root in *it*.

REM. 2.—*I* is changed before *t* into *š*, and before *n* into *š*; and *š* is inserted before *r* when preceded by *t* or *b* (126, 1); e. g., Gen. *cāpītis*; root, *cāpīt*; Nom. *cāpūt*. Gen. *flūminis*; root, *flūmīn*; Nom. *flūmēn*. Gen. *patrīs*; root, *patr*; Nom. *pāšr*.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into *s*, *ēs*, *īs*, (or for neuters into) *ě*: as, *urbīs*, Nom. *urbs*; *nūbēm*, Nom. *nūbēs*, &c.

REM. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

REM. 2.—*T*, *d*, or *r*, at the end of the root, is dropped before *s*, and *ř* is changed into *š*; *cs* or *gs* will of course be written *x*; e. g., *pīštātēm*, Nom. *pīštās* (*t* dropped before *s*); *mīlītēm*, Nom. *mīlēs* (*t* dropped before *s*, and *ř* changed into *š*); *rēgēm*, Nom. *rex* (rega. — rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with *ēr* or *ōr*, as the last syllable of the root, into *ūs*: as, *gěněřīs*, Nom. *gěnūs*.

REM.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in *ēr* or *ōr*.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the *manner* or *cause* of its action, or the *means* or *instrument* employed; e. g.,

Irām meām dōnō plācābīt.

(*Anger my with a gift he will appease.*)

He will appease my anger with a gift.

147. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *cause* or *manner* of an

* The *acc. sing.* is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

† The *nom.* and *voc.*, it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the *ablative*.

REM.—In the above example, *donō* expresses the means employed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

148. VOCABULARY.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	high, lofty	(altitude).
Cātēnā, ae,	chain.	
Cingērē,	to surround.	
Complērē,	to fill	(complement).
Cunctūs, ā, ūm,	all (as a whole).	
Dōnūm, i,	gift	(donation).
Flūmēn, inīs,	river.	
Glādiū, i,	sword.	
Illustrārē,	{ to illumine to illuminate	{ (illustrate)
Irā, ae,	anger	{ (ire). (irascible).
Lux, lucis,	light	(lucid).
Mūliēr, ēris,	woman.	
Placārē,	to appease	(placable).

149. Exercises.

(a) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat. 4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistōlas scribit. 8. Agricōla urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastōrum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii animum donis placābunt.

(b) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains. 2. The river will surround the beautiful city. 3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland. 4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands. 5. He will

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

LESSON XXIX.

Adjectives.—Third Declension.

150. ADJECTIVES of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz :

- 1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
- 2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
- 3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension, gender, and ending*. It must, however, be observed,

- 1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ĩ*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ĩ* only.
- 2) That all except comparatives have, in the plural, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *ĩĩ*, and the *genitive* in *ĩĩm*.

CLASS I.—THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in *ēr*, the feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ē*.

PARADIGM.

Acēr, <i>sharp</i> .			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	Acēr,	acr-īs,	acr-ē.
G.	Acr-īs,	acr-īs,	acr-īa.
D.	Acr-I,	acr-I,	acr-I.
A.	Acr-ēm,	acr-ēm,	acr-ē.
V.	Acēr,	acr-īs,	acr-ē.
A.	Acr-I,	acr-I,	acr-I.
PLURAL.			
N.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-īa.
G.	Acr-iūm,	acr-iūm,	acr-iūm.
D.	Acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs.
A.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-īa.
V.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-īa.
A.	Acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs,	acr-ībūs.

CLASS II.—TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ē*, except comparatives,* which have the masculine and feminine in *īōr*, and the neuter in *iūs*.

* The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

PARADIGMS.

1. Tristis, *sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Trist-is,	trist-ē.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-is,	trist-iis.	G. Trist-iūm,	trist-iūm.
D. Trist-I,	trist-I.	D. Trist-ibūs,	trist-ibūs.
A. Trist-ēm,	trist-ē.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-is,	trist-ē.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-I,	trist-I.	A. Trist-ibūs,	trist-ibūs.

2. Tristiōr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	N. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
G. Tristiōr-is,	tristiōr-iis.	G. Tristiōr-ūm,	tristiōr-ūm.
D. Tristiōr-I,	tristiōr-I.	D. Tristiōr-ibūs,	tristiōr-ibūs.
A. Tristiōr-ēm,	tristiūs.	A. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
V. Tristiōr,	tristiūs.	V. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ā.
A. Tristiōr-ē (I),	tristiōr-ē (I).	A. Tristiōr-ibūs,	tristiōr-ibūs.

CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have *only one* form in the nominative singular for all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Fēlix, *happy*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
G. Fēlic-is,	fēlic-iis.	G. Fēlic-iūm,	fēlic-iūm.
D. Fēlic-I,	fēlic-I.	D. Fēlic-ibūs,	fēlic-ibūs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
A. Fēlic-ē (I),	fēlic-ē (I).	A. Fēlic-ibūs,	fēlic-ibūs.

PARADIGMS,—continued.

2. Prudens, <i>prudent</i> .			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Prudens,	prudens.	N. Prudent-ēs,	prudent-iā.
G. Prudent-ia,	prudent-ia.	G. Prudent-iūm,	prudent-iūm.
D. Prudent-i,	prudent-i.	D. Prudent-ibūs,	prudent-ibūs.
A. Prudent-ēm,	prudens.	A. Prudent-ēs,	prudent-iā.
V. Prudens,	prudens.	V. Prudent-ēs,	prudent-iā.
A. Prudent-ē (ī),	prudent-ē (ī).	A. Prudent-ibūs,	prudent-ibūs.

155. VOCABULARY.

Acēr, acris, acrē,	sharp, severe	(<i>acrid</i>).
Fidelis, ē,	trusty, faithful	(<i>fidelity</i>).
Fortis, ē,	brave	(<i>fortitude</i>).
Gloriā, ae,	glory.	
Māculārē,	to blemish, to stain	(<i>maculate</i>).
Maximī,	at a very high (price), very highly.	
Maximī aestimārē,	to prize very highly.	
Pausaniās, ae,	Pausanias,	
	<i>a distinguished Spartan general.</i>	
Prudens, entis,	prudent, cautious.	
Turpis, ē,	base, disgraceful	(<i>turpitude</i>)
Sāpiens, entis,	wise.	
Splendens, entis,	shining	(<i>splendid</i>).

156. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servi domīnos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splendens cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtutem *maximi*² aestimant.

5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtutem laudant. 7. Boni virtutem *magni* aestimābant. 8. Pausanias gloriam turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculābat.

(b) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 3. The brave will

conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state *very highly*.*

6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country

8. The prudent do not violate severe laws. †

LESSON XXX.

Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

157. ADJECTIVES are either of the *first* and *second declension*, or of the *third only*: those of the first and second declension are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter* like nouns of the *second* declension, and in the *feminine* like nouns of the *first*; those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the *third*. (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			A few have Sing. thus:		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	2*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ēr,†	ā,	ūm.	I,	ae,	ā.	ūs, ēr,	ā,	ūm.
G.	I,	ae,	I.	orūm,	arūm,	orūm.	iūs,	iūs,	iūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	Is,	Is,	Is.	I,	I,	I.
A.	ūm,	ām,	ūm.	ōs,	ās,	ā.	ūm,	ām,	ūm.
V.	ē, ēr,†	ā,	ūmr.	I,	ae,	ā.	ē, ēr,	ā,	ūm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	Is,	Is,	Is.	ō,	ā,	ō.

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ēr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ē* is sometimes dropped): *ēr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

† See list, 118, REM.

159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

	THREE TERM.			TWO TERM.		COMPARATIVES.		ONE TERM.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	ēr,*	is,	ē.	is,	ē.	ōr,†	ūs.	various.	
G.	is,	is,	is.	is,	is.	ōr†-is,	ōr-is.	is.	
I.	I,	I,	I.	I,	I.	ōr-I,	ōr-I.	I.	
A.	ēm,	ēm,	ē.	ēm,	ē.	ōr-ēm,	ūs.	ēm.‡	
V.	ēr,*	is,	ē.	is,	ē.	ōr,	ūs.	like nom.	
A.	I,	I,	I.	I,	I.	ōr-ē (or-I), or-ē (or-I).		ē (I).	
N.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
G.	iūm,	iūm,	iūm.	iūm,	iūm.	ōr-ūm,	ōr-ūm.	iūm,	iūm.
D.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.
A.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
V.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs,	iā.
A.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the *Fourth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ūs*, and the nominative in *ūs* and *ū*.

161. In this declension, nouns in *ūs* (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*, and those in *ū* are *neuter*.

162. The root is found by dropping the *nominative ending*: as, *fructūs*, fruit; root, *fruct*: *cornū*, a horn; root, *corn*.

163. Nouns in *ūs* (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abt.
Sing	ūs,	ūs,	ui,	ūm,	ūs,	ū.
Plur.	ūs,	uūm,	ibūs (ūbūs‡),	ūs,	ūs,	ibūs (ūbūs‡).

* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, REM. 2.)

† The *ōr* here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* of the *neut. sing.*, it is changed into *ūa*.

‡ Neut. like nom.

§ This ending is used only in a few words.

164. Neuters in *ū*, though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in *ūs*, and are declined with the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing. <i>ū</i>	<i>ūs</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> .
Plur. <i>uā</i> ,	<i>uūm</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> (<i>ūbūs*</i>),	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> (<i>ūtūs*</i>).

PARADIGMS.

1. <i>Fructūs, m., fruit.</i> (root, <i>fruct.</i>)		2. <i>Cornū, n., a horn.</i> (root, <i>corn.</i>)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	N. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
G. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-uūm</i> .	G. <i>Corn-ūs</i> ,	<i>Corn-uūm</i> .
D. <i>Fruct-ūi</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ībūs</i> .	D. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-ībūs</i> .
A. <i>Fruct-ūm</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	A. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
V. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	V. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
A. <i>Fruct-ū</i> .	<i>Fruct-ībūs</i> .	A. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-ībūs</i> .

165. VOCABULARY.

<i>Currūs, ūs</i> ,	chariot.	
<i>Dux, dūcīs, m. and f.</i>	leader, guide	(<i>duke</i>).
<i>Et</i> ,	and.	
<i>Exercūciārē</i> ,	to torture	(<i>excruciate</i>).
<i>Exercitūs, ūs</i> ,	army.	
<i>Innocens, entīs</i> ,	innocent.	
<i>Luctūs, ūs</i> ,	grief, sadness.	
<i>Mānūs, ūs, f.</i>	hand	(<i>manacle</i>).
<i>Mētūs, ūs</i> ,	fear.	
<i>Nescīrē</i> ,	not to know, to be ignorant of.	
<i>Sīnūs, ūs</i> ,	bosom	(<i>sinuous</i>).
<i>Sullā, ae</i> ,	<i>Sulla, a man's name.</i>	

* This ending is used only in a few words.

166. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus animum excruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4. Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam monstrābunt. 6. Puella epistolam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistolas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sullae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domini mortem vindicābit. 10. Pastoris filius mortem non timet. 11. Luctus et metus animum excruciant (612, REM.).

(b) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the innocent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11. Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

LESSON XXXI.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

167. NOUNS of the *Fifth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ēi*,* and the nominative in *ēs*.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dies*, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *epēi* (where it is short), *dei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

and masculine only in the plural; and *mēridiēs*, mid-day, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—*diēs*, a day, and *rēs*, a thing, are complete in the plural.

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, *diēs*, a day; root, *dī*.

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ei</i> ,*	<i>ei</i> ,*	<i>ēm</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ē</i> .
Plur.	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ērūm</i> ,	<i>ēbūs</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ēbūs</i> .

PARADIGMS.

<i>Rēs, f., a thing.</i> (root, <i>r</i> .)			<i>Diēs, m. and f., a day.</i> (root, <i>dī</i> .)		
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>R-ēs</i> ,	<i>R-ēs</i> .		N. <i>Di-ēs</i> ,	<i>Di-ēs</i> .	
G. <i>R-ēi</i> ,	<i>R-ērūm</i> .		G. <i>Di-ēi</i> ,	<i>Di-ērūm</i> .	
D. <i>R-ēi</i> ,	<i>R-ēbūs</i> .		D. <i>Di-ēi</i> ,	<i>Di-ēbūs</i> .	
A. <i>R-ēm</i> ,	<i>R-ēs</i> .		A. <i>Di-ēm</i> ,	<i>Di-ēs</i> .	
V. <i>R-ēs</i> ,	<i>R-ēs</i> .		V. <i>Di-ēs</i> ,	<i>Di-ēs</i> .	
A. <i>R-ē</i> ,	<i>R-ēbūs</i> .		A. <i>Di-ē</i> ,	<i>Di-ēbūs</i> .	

171. VOCABULARY.

Acies, *ei*, line of battle.

Acieṃ instruērē, to draw up an army in order of battle.

Copiae,† *arūm*, forces (copious).

Diēs, *ei*, day.

* See note on page 78.

† *Copiae* is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

Educēre,	to lead forth	(<i>educē</i>).
Emēre,	to purchase.	
Equitātūs, ōs,	cavalry.	
Fidēs, ēī,	faith, one's word	(<i>fidelity</i>).
Instruēre,	to arrange, to array	(<i>instruct</i>).
Omnīs, ē,	all, every.	
Proximūs, ō, ūm,	nearest, next	(<i>proximate</i>).
Reducēre,	to lead back	(<i>reduce</i>).
Servare,	to keep, to observe	(<i>serve</i>).
Spēs, ēī,	hope.	

172. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Christiānus fidem suam servat. 2. Boni fidem suam non violant. 3. Dies veniet. 4. Proximo die (88) Caesar copias suas reducēbat. 5. Proximo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitātum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellam regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistolam sua manu scribit.

(b) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope *very highly*.² 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry *very highly*. 7. The king thinks *highly* of his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind *very highly*. 11. The avaricious value money *very highly*.

LESSON XXXII.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender.

173. TERMINATIONS of Substantives.

SINGULAR.									
Dec. I.		Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.	
F.		M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.	
N. ā.	ūs, ěr, ĩr.	ūm.	various.			ūs.	ū.	ēs.	
G. ae.	ī.		īs.			ūs.		ēī.*	
D. ae.	ō.		ī.			ūī.	ū.	ēī.*	
A. ām.	ūm.		ēm (īm).	like nom.	ūm.		ū.	ēm.	
V. ā.	ē, ěr, ĩr.	ūm.	like nom.		ūs.		ū.	ēs.	
A. a.	ō.		ē (ī).		ū.			ē.	

PLURAL.									
N. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs,	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
G. ārūm.	ōrūm		ūm (iūm).		uūm.		ērūm.		
D. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.		
A. ās.	ōs.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
V. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
A. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.		

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only *nominative endings* not already noticed, are *e*, *as*, and *es*, in the first declension, and *os* and *on* in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

* See 167, REM.

DECLENSION I.

1. Aenēās (*c man's name*). | 2. Anchīsēs (*a man's name*).

N. Aenē-ās,
G. Aenē-ae,
D. Aenē-ae,
A. Aenē-ām (an),
V. Aenē-a,
A. Aenē-a.

N. Anchīs-ēs,
G. Anchīs-ae,
D. Anchīs-ae,
A. Anchīs-en,
V. Anchīs-ē (a),
A. Anchīs-ē (a).

3. Epitome, *an abridgment*.*Singular.*

N. Epitōm-ē,
G. Epitōm-ēs,
D. Epitōm-ae,
A. Epitōm-en,
V. Epitōm-ē,
A. Epitōm-ē,

Plural.

Epitōm-ae.
Epitōm-arūm.
Epitōm-ia.
Epitōm-ās.
Epitōm-ae.
Epitōm-ia.

DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion, *n. (name of a city)*. | 2. Delos, *f. (name of an island)*.

N. Ili-ōn,
G. Ili-i,
D. Ili-o,
A. Ili-ōn,
V. Ili-ōn,
A. Ili-o.

N. Dēl-ōs,
G. Dēl-i,
D. Dēl-o,
A. Dēl-ōn,
V. Dēl-ē,
A. Dēl-o.

DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (*a man's name*). | 2. Hērōs, *a hero*.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Pērcl-ēs,
G. Pērcl-īs,
D. Pērcl-i,
A. Pērcl-ēm (eā),
V. Pērcl-ēs (ē),
A. Pērcl-ē.

N. Hērō-a, Hērō-ēs.
G. Hērō-īs, Hērō-ūm.
D. Hērō-i, Hērō-ībūs.
A. Hērō-ēm (ā), Hērō-ēs (as).
V. Hērō-a, Hērō-ēs.
A. Hērō-ē, Hērō-ībūs.

175. Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

	MASOULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Dec. I.	as and es.	ă and ă.	
Dec. II.	ēr, ir, ūs (and os*).		ŭm (and on*).
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, in- creasing in gen. and o, <i>except</i> do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, ia, ya, aus, s impure,† x and es not in- creasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us
Dec. IV.	ŭs.		u.
Dec. V.		es.	

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

176. VOCABULARY.

Accīpērē,†	to receive, to accept.
Achillēs,‡ is.	Achilles, <i>a Grecian hero.</i>
Aenēas, ae,	Aeneas, <i>a Trojan prince.</i>
Anchisēs, ae,	Anchises, <i>the father of Aeneas.</i>
Ascāniūs, i,	Ascanius, <i>the son of Aeneas.</i>
Carthāgō, inis,	Carthage, <i>a city in the northern part of Africa.</i>

* The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

† Preceded by a consonant.

‡ Accīpērē forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

§ Achillēs, being a Greek noun, is declined like Pericles (174).

Dido,* us, or onis,	Dido, queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.	
Epitōmē, ēa,	abridgment	(epitome).
Hērōs, ōis,	hero.	
Histōriā, ae,	history.	
Industriā, ae,	industry.	
Nostēr, trā, trūm,	our.	
Rēgnūm, i,	kingdom, government.	
Romā, ae,	Rome, city of Italy, on the river Tiber.	
Trojanūs, ā, ūm,	Trojan.	

177. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accipit. 3. Dido Carthagīnem condēbat. 4. Epitōmen oratiōnis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milītes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria *multum voluptātis* habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

★ (b) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome) 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history. 7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys. ★

* Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in *us*, and all the other cases like the nom.

LESSON XXXIII.

Verbs.—*Essē*, to be. *Predicate*, *Essē*, with a *Noun* or an *Adjective*.

178. *Essē*, to be, is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the *third persons* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses*, the following

PARADIGM

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Present.	Est, he, she, or it is,	Sunt, they are,
Imperfect.	Erāt, “ “ “ was,	Erant, “ were,
Future.	Erit, “ “ “ will be.	Erunt, “ will be.

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb *essē* (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. *Terrā est rōtundā.*

The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply *est*, but *est rōtundā*; for the assertion is not that the earth *is* (i. e. exists), but that the earth *is round*.

REM. 2.—The adjective *rōtundā* agrees with the subject *terrā* in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, by the rule already given. (114).

2. *Plūrīmae stellae sōlēs sunt.*

(*Very many stars suns are.*)

Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is *sōlēs sunt*.

180. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate after *essē* is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, *sōlēs* is in the nominative by this rule.

181. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The adjectives *dignūs*, *indignūs*, *contentūs*, *praeditūs*, *frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g.,

Virtūs parvō contentā est.
 (*Virtue with little content is.*)
 Virtue is content *with little*.

REM.—*Parvō* in this example is a neut. adj. used as a noun; it is put in the ablative after *contentā*, by the rule just given.

182. VOCABULARY.

Arbōr, <i>pr̄is</i> , <i>f.</i>	tree	(<i>arbor</i>).
Beatūs, <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	happy	(<i>beatitudo</i>).
Candidūs, <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	white	(<i>candid</i>).
Contentūs, <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	content, contented.	
Culpā, <i>ae</i> ,	blame, fault	(<i>culpable</i>).
Dignūs, <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	worthy	(<i>dignity</i>).
Essē,	to be.	
Est,	is, it is.	
Fācērē,*	to do, to make.	
Flōrērē,	to flourish.	
Frētūs, <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	relying on.	
Indignūs, <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	unworthy	(<i>indignity</i>).
Laus, <i>dis</i> ,	praise	(<i>laud</i>).
Libēr, <i>ērā</i> , <i>ērūm</i> ,	free	(<i>liberty</i>).
Nēmō (<i>inīs</i> ,†)	nobody, no one.	
Nix, <i>nivīs</i> ,	snow.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Parvūm (<i>neut. adj.</i>),	little, a little.	
Praeditūs, <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> ,	endued with.	
Quām,	how.	
Quām multī, <i>ae</i> , <i>ā</i> ,	how many.	
Sempēr,	always.	
Virēs, viriūm, <i>plur. of vis</i> ,	strength.	
Vitā, <i>ae</i> ,	life	ot (<i>vital</i>).

* This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

† The genitive *neminis* and ablative *nemine* are not in good use.

183. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Nix est candida. 2. Bonus est beatus. 3. Boni sunt beati. 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt. 5. Servus laude dignus est. 6. Patris mei servus laude indignus est.

7. Caius patriam auro vendebat. 8. Caius, homo vita indignus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multa laude florēbat.

(b) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.

6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endowed with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does *much good*.⁴ 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*.⁴ 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.



LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Predicate.

184. AN *infinitive mood* (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course takes the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Difficilē est iudicārē.

(*Difficult (it) is to judge.*)

It is difficult to judge, or, To judge is difficult.

REM.—Here *iudicārē* (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate *difficile est* (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb *est*, and the adjective *difficilis* agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after *essē* does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive*; e. g.,

Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē.

(*Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*)

It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

REM. 1.—In this example the subject is *nēmīnēm viōlārē*, and the predicate, *Christiānī est*.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē*, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cicēro ērāt consūl*, *Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the *genitive* when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē*, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb *essē* (as *est*, *ērāt*, *ērīt*, &c.), such a substantive as *duty*, *part*, *mark*, *business*, &c., must be supplied.

<i>English Idiom.</i>		<i>Latin Idiom.</i>
It is the part	} of a wise man.	It is of a wise man.
" duty		
" business		
" mark		
" character		

188. VOCABULARY.

Difficilia, ě,	difficult.	
Errare,	to err.	
Facilia, ě,	easy	(facility).
Fidem violare,	to break one's word.	
Humanus, a, um,	human, natural to man.	
Magnū est,	it is a great thing.	
Peccare,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Turpis, ě,	base, disgraceful	(turpitude).
Violare,	{ to offend against, to wrong, to break a law, one's word, &c. } (violate).	



189. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Humānum*⁶ est peccāre. 2. *Humānum* est errāre. 3. *Turpe* est fidem suam violāre. 4. *Patris*⁷ est filium suum docēre. 5. *Regis* est regnāre.

6. *Matris* est filias suas docēre. 7. *Servi* est viam monstrāre. 8. *Turpe* est poētae domum evertēre. 9. *Matres* filias laudant. 10. *Boni* est fidem servāre. 11. *Impii* est fidem violāre.

REM. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun *it* is used before the verb *is*; hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun *it*, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

REM. 2.—After *it is*, such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(b) 1. *It* is a great (thing) not to fear death.⁶ 2. *It* is easy to err. 3. *It* is (the duty)⁷ of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. *It* is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. *It* is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. *It* is natural-to-man to prize money *very highly*. 7. *It* is the mark of an unlearned man *to think little* of wisdom. 8. *It* is the slave's *business* to shut the gates of the city. 9. *It* is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. *A*

good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the *part*' of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.



LESSON XXXV.

Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.

190. THE tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as *not completed*. There are also three tenses for *completed* action, viz.:

- 1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *present* time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., *āmāvīt*, he has loved.
- 2) The *Pluperfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *past* time; as, *āmāvērāt*, he had loved.
- 3) The *Future Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *future* time; as, *āmāvērīt*, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second root* is formed by adding *āv*, *ū*,* and *īv*, respectively, to the root† of the verb; e. g.:

* A very few verbs of the second conjugation add *ev*, which may be regarded as the full form for which *u* is a contraction (the *e* being dropped, and *v* changed to *u*).

† This we will now call the 1st root, to distinguish it from the 2d.

		<i>First Root.</i>	<i>Second Root.</i>
Conj. I.	Amără,	ăm,	ămăv.
Conj. II.	Möněřě,	mön,	mönŭ.
Conj. IV.	Audīřě,	aud,	audiv.

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the *third persons singular* of the tenses for *completed action* are formed by adding to the *second root* the following *endings*:

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
īt,	ěřăt,	ěřīt.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amără, to love: 1st root, *ăm*; 2d root, *ămăv*.

Perfect. Amav-īt, he, she, or it has loved (or loved).*

Pluperf. Amav-ěřăt, " " " had loved.

Fut. Perf. Amav-ěřīt, " " " will have loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Möněřě, to advise: 1st root, *mön*; 2d root, *mönŭ*.

Perfect. Mönu-īt, he, she, or it has advised (or advised).*

Pluperf. Mönu-ěřăt, " " " had advised.

Fut. Perf. Mönu-ěřīt, " " " shall have advised.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīřě, to hear: 1st root, *aud*; 2d root, *audiv*.

Perfect. Audiv-īt, he, she, or it has heard (or heard).*

Pluperf. Audiv-ěřăt, " " " had heard.

Fut. Perf. Audiv-ěřīt, " " " shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the third persons *plural*, in the tenses for completed action, are formed by simply

* The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our *perfect indefinite*, and sometimes to our *perfect definite* (perfect with have); hence, *ămăvīt* may be translated either *he has loved*, or *he loved*.

inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third person singular (35), except in the perfect, where *it* must be changed into *erunt*; e. g.,

		<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Fut. Perfect.</i>
Conj. I.	{ Sing.	Amāv-īt,	āmāv-ērāt,	āmāv-ērīt.
	{ Plur.	Amāv-erunt,	āmāv-erant,	āmāv-erint.
Conj. II.	{ Sing.	Mōnu-īt,	mōnu-ērāt,	mōnu-ērīt.
	{ Plur.	Mōnu-erunt,	mōnu-erant,	mōnu-erint.
Conj. IV.	{ Sing.	Audīv-īt,	audīv-ērāt,	audīv-ērīt.
	{ Plur.	Audīv-erunt,	audīv-erant,	audīv-erint.

195. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, av,*	to estimate, to value.	
Arārē, av,	to plough	(arable).
Audīre, iv,	to hear	(audible).
Dilāniārē, av,	to tear in pieces.	
Jūrārē, av,	to swear.	
Laudārē, av,	to praise	(laudable.)
Monstrārē, av,	to show.	
Placārē, av,	to appease	(placable.)
Sēpēlīrē, iv,	to bury.	
Servārē, av,	to keep, to observe.	
Terrērē, u,	to terrify, to frighten.	

196. Exercises.

(a) 1. Puer juravērat. 2. Puēri juravērunt. 3. Agricōla aravērit. 4. Servi aravērunt. 5. Vulpes puēros terruit. 6. Vulpes puēros terruērunt. 7. Poētae sapientiam parvi aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimavērat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam parvi aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam parvi aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētae sapi-

* The learner will readily form the *second root* from the *first*, by adding the endings here given.

entiam parvi aestimavērant. 12. Pater filium sepelivit. 13. Puēri patrem sepelivērant.

(b) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom *at a low price*. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

LESSON XXXVI.

Third Conjugation.—Class I.—Second Root the same as the First.

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Those which have the *second root* the same as the first.

2) Those which form it by the addition of *s*.

198. The *first class* comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant; e. g.,

Suēřě, *to sew*: 1st root, sŭ; 2d root, sŭ.
Děfenděřě, *to defend*: “ dēfend; “ dēfend.

199. The manner in which the *third persons* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

PARADIGM.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Dēfendērē, to defend: 1st root, *dēfend*; 2d root, *dēfend*.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
Dēfend-īt,	dēfend-ērāt,	dēfend-ērīt.
Dēfend-ērunt,	dēfend-ērant,	dēfend-ērint.

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects; * e. g.,

Rex *pēr* urbēm ambŭlābāt.

(*The king through the city was walking.*)

The king was walking *through* the city.

REM.—In this example, *pēr*, through, is a *preposition*.

201. PARTIAL RULE OF SYNTAX.—Some prepositions govern the *accusative*, and some the *ablative*.

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The *accusative*, *urbēm*, in the above example, is governed by the preposition *pēr*.

202. VOCABULARY.

Aedificiŭm, I,	building, edifice.	
Ambŭlārē, av,	to walk.	
Annuērē, annŭ,	to assent, to give assent.	
Conciliŭm, I,	council, meeting.	
Conditio, ōnis,	condition, terms.	
Constituērē, constitŭ,	to arrange, to appoint	(<i>constitute</i>).
Dēfendērē, dēfend,	to defend.	
Dormirē, iv,	to sleep	(<i>dormant</i>).
Incendērē, incend,	to set on fire, to burn	(<i>incendiary</i>).
Lēgiō, ōnis,	legion, body of foot-soldiers.	
Pēr (<i>prep. with acc.</i>),	through.	
Proeliŭm, I,	battle.	

* It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the *cases* of nouns (63, 80, 86).

Privātūs, ā, ūm,	private, personal.	
Rēliqūa, ā, ūm,	remaining, the rest	(<i>relic</i>).
Respuērē, respū,	to reject.	
Rōmāni (<i>adj. pl.</i>),	Romans.	
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman, belonging to Rome.	
Suērē, sū,	to sew, to stitch.	
Timērē, ū,	to fear	(<i>timid</i>).
Vestis, is,	garment	(<i>vest</i>).

203. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Reliqua privāta aedificia incendērant. 3. Puellae vestem suērunt. 4. Patres annuērant. 5. Milītes urbem defendērant. 6. Rōmāni urbem defendērunt.

7. Reliquas legiōnes in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivērunt. 9. Agricōla per urbem ambulāvit. 10. Non respuīt condiōnem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituērunt. 12. Diem concilio constituērit. 13. Servus viam monstravērat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. *Humānum*⁶ est mortem timēre, 16. *Impiū*⁷ est fidem violāre.

(b) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle. 2. They had appointed a day for the council. 3. The soldiers defended the building. 4. They had defended the poet's house. 5. The queen assented. 6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daughter had walked through the great city. 9. They will *set* the house of the poet *on fire*. 10. It is the *duty*¹ of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

LESSON XXXVII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of *s*; e. g.,

Carpĕrĕ, to pluck; 1st root, carp; 2d root, carps.

Rĕpĕrĕ, to creep; " rĕp; " reps.

REM.—When *b* stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into *p* before *s* in the second; e. g.,

Scribĕrĕ, to write; scrib; scrips (not scribs).

Nūbĕrĕ, to marry; nūb; nups (not nubs).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e. g.,

Portām invītūs claudĕt.

(*Lat. Id.*) The gate unwilling he will shut (*adj.*).

(*Eng. Id.*) He will shut the gate unwillingly (*adv.*).

206. VOCABULARY.

Carpĕrĕ, earps,	to pluck, to card, to gather.
Dēglūbĕrĕ, dēglups,	to flay.
Lanā, ae,	wool.
Lūdĕrĕ, lūs,	to play.
Mālūs, ā, ūm,	bad.
Ovīs, īs,	sheep.
Scribĕrĕ, scrips,	to write.
Uvā, ae,	grape.

207. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Caius epistolās sua manu scripsit. 2. Puella epistolām sua manu scripsērat. 3. Puēri lanam carpsērunt. 4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facīle est * lanam carpēre. 6. Pater meus fidem servavērat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. 8. Sapientis est * virtūtem magni aestimāre. 9. Virtūtem magni aestimavērint.

(b) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand. 2. The girl had written letters in her own hand. 3. They wrote letters. 4. The girl has plucked a flower. 5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding *s* to the First.

208. WHEN a *k*-sound (*c*, *g*, *h*, *qu*) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the *s* which is added, and forms *x* (i. e. *cs*, *gs*, *hs*, or *qus* becomes *x*); e. g.,

* What is the subject of *est*? (#08, 2.)

Cingĕrĕ, *to surround*; cing, cinx (*cings*).

Tĕgĕrĕ, *to cover*; tĕg, tex (*tegs*).

Trahĕrĕ, *to draw*; trah, trax (*trahs*).

Cōquĕrĕ, *to cook*; cōqu, cox (*coqus*).

a) In a very few verbs *gu* and *v* must be treated as *k*-sounds in the formation of the second root; e. g.,

Exstinguĕrĕ, *to extinguish*; exstingu, extinx.

Vivĕrĕ, *to live*; viv, vix.

b) *Fluĕrĕ*, to flow, and *struĕrĕ*, to build, together with their compounds, have the second root in *x*, as if the first ended in a *k*-sound, as probably it did originally.

c) The *k*-sound is sometimes dropped before *s* in the second root; e. g.,

Spargĕrĕ, *to scatter*; sparg, spars.

Mergĕrĕ, *to merge*; merg, mers.

Parcĕrĕ, *to spare*; parc, pars.

209. VOCABULARY.

Cībŭs, i,	food.	
Cingĕrĕ, cinx,	to surround.	
Complĕrĕ, ev,	to fill	(<i>complement</i>).
Cōquĕrĕ, cox,	to cook, to bake, to ripen.	
Dicĕrĕ, dix,	to say	(<i>diction</i>).
Hāberĕ, habu,	to have	(<i>habit</i>).
Illustrĕrĕ, av,	to illuminate, to enlighten.	
Mendaciŭm, i,	lie, falsehood	(<i>mendacious</i>).
Multā (<i>neut. pl.</i>),	many (things).	
Multŭs, ā, ūm,	much, <i>pl.</i> many.	
Palliŭm, i,	cloak	(<i>to palliate</i>).
Peccārĕ, av,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Prudentiā, ae,	prudence.	
Simŭlatiō, ōnis,	assumed appearance, pretence	(<i>dissimulation</i>).
Stultitiā, ae,	folly	(<i>stultify</i>).

Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, greatest	(<i>summū</i>).
Tēgērē, tēx,	to cover.	
Viōlarē, av,	to violate, to break	(<i>violation</i>).

210. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer dixit. 2. Caius, homo vita indignus, dixērat. 3. Puellae dixērunt. 4. Flumen urbem cinxit. 5. Flumīna urbes cinxērunt. 6. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio tēxit.

7. Prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae tēxerat. 8. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae tēxērunt. 9. Christiāni non est mendacio culpam tegere. 10. Turpe est peccāre. 11. Turpe est mendacio culpam tegere. 12. Sol cuncta suā luce illustravērat. 13. Caius leges civitātis violavērit.

(b) 1. The woman has surrounded her head with a garland. 2. The slave has surrounded his head with a garland. 3. They had surrounded their heads with garlands. 4. The boy had said nothing. 5. The girl cooked the food. 6. They had cooked the food.

7. The king had surrounded the city with a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a wall. 9. They covered the fault with a lie. 10. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. 11. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. 12. The slave had said many (things). 13. The sun fills all things with its light. 14. It is the business of the slave⁷ to cook food for his master. 15. It is never useful to lose time. 16. He will lose much pleasure.⁴ 17. How much pleasure will he lose?

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

211. WHENEVER a *t*-sound (*d* or *t*) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before *s* in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

Claudĕrĕ, to shut;	claud,	claus	(clauds).
Amittĕrĕ, to lose;	āmitt,	amīs	(amitts).
Dīvidĕrĕ, to divide;	dīvid,	dīvis	(divids).

212. When a limiting noun denotes some *characteristic* or *quality* of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

Puēr exīmiaē pulchrītūdīnīs.
 Puēr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnē.
 A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, *Lātīnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, *Rēgis filiūs*, *the king's son*: except
 - (a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as, *Puēr exīmiaē pulchrītūdīnīs*;

or, *Puēr eximīa pulchritūdīnē*, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *acquitting*, *warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caiūm prōditiōnīs accūsant.
(*Caius of treachery they accuse.*)
They accuse Caius of treachery.*

REM.—Here *prōditiōnīs* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (*Eng. Id.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat. Id.*) To condemn of the head (*cāpītīs*).†

216. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē, av,	to accuse.	
Ambītūs, ūs,	bribery.	
Amittērē, amīs,	to lose.	
Cāpītīs (<i>gen.</i>),	of the head, to death	(<i>capital</i>).
Claudērē, claus,	to shut	(<i>close</i>).
Damnārē, av,	to condemn.	
Fāciēs, ei,	face, appearance.	
Furtūm, i,	theft	(<i>furtive</i>).
Ingēniūm, i,	talent, ability	(<i>ingenious</i>).
Lūdērē, lus,	to play.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Prōditiō, ōnīs,	treachery.	
Saltārē, av,	to dance.	
Vīr, † vīrī,	man, hero.	

* This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply *crimīnē* with *prōditiōnīs* in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, 'They accuse Caius *with the charge* of treachery.'

† We may suppose that it was originally, "to condemn to the loss of the head;" or, "to the punishment of the head."

‡ *Hōmo*, G. *hōmīnīs*, and *vīr* are both *man*: but *homo* is *man* as opposed to other animals; that is, a *human being*. whereas *vīr* is *man*

217. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. *Portas urbis clausērant.* 2. *Caius multum temporis amīsit.* 3. *Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum temporis amīsit.* 4. *Balbus ambitus accusavērant.* 5. *Puēri in prato lusērunt.*

6. *Balbus capītis damnābunt.* 7. *Christiāni est avaritiam damnāre.* 8. *Caius accusāvit.* 9. *Caius, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavērat.* 10. *Facile est saltāre.* 11. *Difficile est iram placāre.* 12. *Facile est puēri animum dono placāre.* 13. *Ursus in antro dormīvit.* 14. *Hiēme ursi in antris dormiunt.* 15. *Nunquam utīle est peccāre.*

(b) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time. 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endowed with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

as opposed to *woman*.—When *men* means *human beings*, *men* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homīnes*.—When *man* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human being*.—When *man* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vir*.

LESSON XL.

*Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—
Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).*

218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verbs.

Conj. I. av.	Conj. II. u (or ěv).	Conj. III. s, or like 1st root.	Conj. IV. iv.
-----------------	-------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------

REM.—The above table presents only the *regular* endings of the second root; there are, however, several irregularities in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each* of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

Jŭvārě, <i>to assist</i> ;	jŭv,	jŭv.
Vīdērě, <i>to see</i> ;	vīd,	vīd.
Eděrě, <i>to eat</i> ;	ěd,	ěd.
Věnīrě, <i>to come</i> ;	věn,	věn.

1) In the third conjugation,

a) If the first root has *ǎ*, the second will have *ĕ*.

b) *M* and *n* are often dropped before a final mute; e. g.,

Căpěrě, <i>to take</i> ;	căp,	cĕp	(<i>ǎ</i> changed to <i>ĕ</i>).
Frangěrě, <i>to break</i> ;	frang,	frĕg	{ (<i>n</i> dropped, and <i>a</i> changed to <i>ĕ</i>).
Rumpěrě, <i>to burst</i> ;	rump,	rŭp	
Vincěrě, <i>to conquer</i> ;	vinc,	vīc	(<i>n</i> dropped).

* In the first and fourth conjugations, *jŭvārě*, *lăvārě*, *věnīrě*, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

220. VOCABULARY.

Brachiūm, i,	arm.	
Cāpĕrĕ, cĕp,	to take, to receive.	
Cībūs, i,	food.	
Emĕrĕ, ĕm,	to buy.	
Exercītūs, ūs,	army.	
Foedūs, ĕris,	treaty	(federal).
Frangĕrĕ, frĕg,	to break	(fragile).
Gallūs, i,	} a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul, } now France.	
Lāvārĕ, lav,		(lave).
Mĕl, mellis,	honey.	
Milĕs, itis,	soldier	(military).
Nēmō, inis,*	nobody, no one.	
Quiā,	because.	
Rumpĕrĕ, rūp,	to break, to violate.	
Sempĕr,	always.	
Utilis, ĕ,	useful	(utility).
Vĕnirĕ, ven,	to come.	
Vidĕrĕ, vid,	to see	(visible).
Vinculūm, i,	chain.	

221. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puĕri manus lāvĕrant. 3. Agricōla exercītum vīdit. 4. Milĭtes vĕnĕrunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frĕgĕrat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cĕpĕrunt!

7. Nunquam utĭle est foedus rumpĕre. 8. Nunquam utĭle est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facĭle est puerōrum anĭmos donis placāre. 10. Turpe est foedĕra negligĕre. 11. Galli negligĕbant foedĕra. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis textit. 14. Multa voluptātis cĕpĕrant. 15.

* The gen. *nēmīnis* and abl. *nēmīnē* are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisērant. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

LESSON XLI.

Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—Reduplication.

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with *e*; e. g.,

Dăřě, to give;	d,	děd.
Morděřě, to bite;	mord,	mōmord.
Currěřě, to run;	curr,	cūcurr.

REM.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, *cădăřě*, to fall; 2d root, *cădă* (*ă* changed to *ı*).

223. VOCABULARY

Ab (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
Auctumnūs, i,	autumn.
Barbā, ae,	beard.
Colōr, ōris,	color.
Currēre, cūcurr,	to run.
Dārē, dēd,	to give.
Finis, is, <i>m. or f.</i>	end.
Hūmērūs, i,	shoulder.
Mordērē, mōmord,	to bite.
Mūtārē, av,	to change.
Nox, noctis,	night.
Pendērē, pēpend,	to hang (<i>intrans.</i>).
Pēr (<i>prep. with accus.</i>)	through.
Sāgittā, ae,	arrow.
Tondērē, tōtond,	to shear, shave.

224. Exercises.

(a) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab humero pependērunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris⁷ est tondēre oves, non deglubēre. 7. Pastōres agricolās risērunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. 9. Boni canis⁷ non est oves mordēre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausērit. 11. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. 12. Lusciniāe colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno lusciniāe colōrem suum mutavērunt.

(b) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear

his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

LESSON XLII.

*Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity—
Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.*

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations.

- 1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Micāřě, to glitter: 1st root, *mīc*; 2d root, *mīcŭ*.

- 2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Rīdēřě, to laugh; 1st root, *rīd*; 2d root, *rīs* (rids).

Lūgēřě, to mourn; " *lūg*; " *luxe* (lugs).

- 3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cōlēřě, to till; 1st root, *cōl*; 2d root, *cōlŭ*.

Pětēřě, to seek; " *pět*; " *pětŭ*.

- 4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third; e. g.,

Apērīrē, to open; 1st root, āpēr; 2d root, āpērū.

Vincīrē, to bind; " vinc; " vinx (cs).

REM.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in *ac*, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into *v* in the 2d; as, *crescērē*, to increase; 1st root, *cresc*; 2d, *crev*. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caiūs annūm ūnūm vixīt.
(Caiūs year one lived.)
Caiūs lived one year.

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; otherwise, in the ablative; e. g.,

1. Caiūs annūm ūnūm *Cortōnae* vixīt.
Caiūs lived one year at *Cortona*.
2. Caiūs annūm ūnūm *Tībūrē* vixīt.
Caiūs lived one year at *Tibur*.

REM.—In these examples, *Cortōnae* and *Tībūrē* are names of towns, the first is put in the *genitive*, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the *ablative*, because it is of the third declension.

228. VOCABULARY.

Amittērē, amīa,	to lose.
Annūs, I,	year.
Apērīrē, āpērū,	to open, to uncover.
Riennūm,	two years, space of two years
Castigārē, av,	to chastise.

Invītūs, ā, ūm,	unwilling.
Lōgērē, lux,	to grieve, mourn, weep for.
Mānērē, mana,	to remain.
Matrōna, ae,	matron.
Rōmā, ae,	Rome, <i>a city of Italy, on the Tiber.</i>
Tībūr, ūria,	Tibur, <i>a town in Latium, in Italy.</i>
Totūs, ā, ūm (g. iūs),	the whole, the entire.

229. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae manserat. 2. Biennium Carthagine manserant. 3. Mater luxerit. 4. Matrōnae luxerunt. 5. Brutum Romānae matrōnae luxerunt. 6. Pastōres agricōlas riserunt. 7. Puēri capita aperuerunt.

8. Domīnus servi sui epistolam aperiet. 9. Domīnus servi sui epistolas aperuerat. 10. Aliquid temporis invītus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est nemīnem violāre. 12. Nemīnem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manēbit. 14. Biennium Carthagine manēbunt.

(b) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls wore mourning for their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

LESSON XLIII.

Subjunctive Mood.

230. THE *Subjunctive Mood* represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a *fact*, but simply as a *possibility*, *wish*, or *conception of the mind*; e. g.,

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. Scribāt, | { he may write,
may he write,
let him write. |
| 2. Venit ūt scribāt, | { he has come <i>that he may write</i> ,
he has come <i>to write</i> . |

REM.—*Scribāt* in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by *ūt*, generally expresses either a *wish* (to be translated by *may he*), or a *command* (to be translated by *let him*, &c.).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed *negatively*, *nē* (never *nōn*) must be used with the subjunctive; e. g.,

Nē pŭtēt, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood* are the *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
	(1st root.)	(1st root.)	(2d root.)	(2d root.)
Conj. I.	ēt,	arēt,	erit,	issēt.
Conj. II.	ēāt,	erēt,	erit,	issēt.
Conj. III.	āt,	erēt,	erit,	issēt.
Conj. IV.	iāt,	irēt,	erit,	issēt.

* The subjunctive has no futures.

REM.—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third singular.

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows:

Present, <i>may</i> or <i>can</i> .
Imperfect, <i>might</i> , <i>could</i> , <i>would</i> , or <i>should</i> .
Perfect, <i>may have</i> .
Pluperfect, <i>might</i> , <i>could</i> , <i>would</i> , or <i>should have</i> .

236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Am-ēt, <i>he may or can love.</i>	Am-ent, <i>they may or can love.</i>
Imp. Am-ēret, <i>he might, &c. love.</i>	Am-arent, <i>they might, &c. love.</i>
Perf. Amāv-ērit, <i>he may have loved.</i>	Amāv-erint, <i>they may have loved.</i>
Plup. Amāv-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have loved.</i>	Amāv-issent, <i>they might, &c. have loved.</i>
SECOND CONJUGATION.	
Pres. Mōn-eēt, <i>he may or can advise.</i>	Mōn-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>
Imp. Mōn-ēret, <i>he might, &c. advise.</i>	Mōn-arent, <i>they might, &c. advise.</i>
Perf. Mōnu-ērīt, <i>he may have advised.</i>	Mōnu-erint, <i>they may have advised.</i>
Plup. Mōnu-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have advised.</i>	Mōnu-issent, <i>they might, &c. have advised.</i>
THIRD CONJUGATION.	
Pres. Rēg-āt, <i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant, <i>they may rule.</i>
Imp. Rēg-ēret, <i>he might, &c. rule.</i>	Rēg-arent, <i>they might, &c. rule.</i>
Perf. Rex-ērīt, <i>he may have ruled.</i>	Rex-erint, <i>they may have ruled.</i>
Plup. Rex-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have ruled.</i>	Rex-issent, <i>they might, &c. have ruled.</i>

PARADIGM—continued.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Aud-īāt, he may hear.	Aud-iant, they may hear.
Imp. Aud-irēt, he might, &c. hear.	Aud-irent, they might, &c. hear.
Perf. Audiv-ērīt, he may have heard.	Audiv-ērint, they may have heard.
Plup. Audiv-issēt, he might, &c. have heard.	Audiv-issent, they might, &c. have heard.

287. Exercises.

(a) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puēri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella. 6. Ludant Puēri. 7. Pater scribēret. 8. Scripsissent. 9. Filium suum sepelīret. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puēri anīmum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servāvit. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 16. Puērum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docuērunt.

(b) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.

238. THE present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a *purpose*.

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. *Eng. Id.* { I have come to see you.
I came to see you.

Lat. Id. { I have come *that I may see* you.
I came *that I might see* you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, *ut* is used with the subj., when negatively, *nē*; e. g.,

1. Balbūm rōgāt *ut* puērūm dōceāt.
(*Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.*)
He asks Balbus to teach the boy.

2. Balbūm rōgāt *nē* puērūm dōceāt.
He asks Balbus not to teach the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the *present tense*; unless the verb on which it depends is in a *past tense* (*imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect*), and then it must be in the *imperfect*. ●

REM.—The perfect definite (193, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action *has been done* in a period of time *still present*), is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.

243. EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnīt ūt portās claudāt.
(*He is coming that the gates he may shut.*)
He is coming to shut the gates.
2. Vēnīt (*indef.*) ūt portās claudērēt.
(*He came that the gates he might shut.*)
He came to shut the gates.
3. Vēnīt (*def.*) ūt portās claudāt.
(*He has come that the gates he may shut.*)
He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the *present* tense, because the verb *vēnīt*, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the *imperfect*, because its verb, *vēnīt* (came), is in the *perfect indefinite*.

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is in the *present*, because the verb *vēnīt* (has come) is in the *perfect definite*, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign *have*, as in example 3.

244. VOCABULARY.

Compārārē, av,	to procure, to raise, to levy.	
Discērē, didic,	to learn.	
Edēre, ed,	to eat	(<i>edible</i>).
Evertēre, evert,	to overthrow, to pull down.	
Lēgērē, lēg,	to read	(<i>legible</i>).
Plurimūs, ā, ūm,	very much or great, <i>pl.</i> , very many.	
Quiescērē, quiēv,	to rest, be quiet	(<i>quiescent</i>).
Rōgārē, av,	to ask, to entreat.	
Vivērē, vix,	to live	(<i>vivid</i>).

245. Exercises.

(Construe *ūt* and the *subjunctive* by the infinitive.)

- (a) 1. Lēgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit* ut discat. Lēgit ut disceret (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut vivēret.

* See 243, REM. 3.

5. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis claudat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compāret. 9. Romae plurīmi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistolam sua manu scribat. 13. Venērat Caius ut Balbi animum donis placāret.

(b) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think *little* of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's head with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom *very highly*.

LESSON XLV.

Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation.

246. It will be remembered that verbs have *three persons* (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *it*, of the third person singular, into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
I,	istī,	īt.	imūs,	istīs,	erunt (or ērē).

248. In all the tenses* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing *t* of the third singular into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
m, ō,	s,	t.	mūs,	tīs,	nt.

a) The ending *o*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative present, future perfect*, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the *future*. The vowel which stands before *t* in the third person is dropped before *o* in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Pres. 1st Conj.	Amāt, <i>he loves,</i>	āmō (<i>ā</i> dropped), <i>I love.</i>
" 2d "	Mōnēt, <i>he advises,</i>	mōneō (<i>ē</i> not dropped), <i>I advise.</i>
" 3d "	Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgō (<i>ī</i> dropped), <i>I rule.</i>
" 4th "	Audīt, <i>he hears,</i>	audiō (<i>ī</i> not dropped), <i>I hear.</i>

b) The ending *m*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative imperfect, pluperfect*, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the *future*, and to the *subjunctive* throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel *ē*, which stands before *t* in the third person, is changed into *ā* before *m* in the first person; e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Imperf.	Amabāt, <i>he was loving,</i>	āmabām, <i>I was loving.</i>
Pluperf.	Amavērāt, <i>he had loved,</i>	āmavērām, <i>I had loved.</i>
Fut. 3d Conj.	Rēgēt, <i>he will rule,</i>	rēgām, <i>I will rule.</i>
" 4th "	Audiēt, <i>he will hear,</i>	audiām, <i>I will hear.</i>

* We of course speak only of the active voice, as the passive has not yet been noticed.

c) In the *present* and *future* tenses of the *indicative*, if *i* stands before *t* in the third singular, it is changed into *iu* in the third plural, in the fourth conjugation, and into *u* in the other conjugations; e. g.,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Fut. 1st Conj. Amabit, <i>he will love,</i>	amabunt, <i>they will love.</i>
" 2d " Monebit, <i>he will advise,</i>	monebunt, <i>they will advise.</i>
Pres. 3d " Regit, <i>he rules,</i>	regunt, <i>they rule.</i>
" 4th " Audit, <i>he hears,</i>	audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>

249. The vowel before the personal endings *mūs* and *tis*, is *long* in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common* (*long* or *short*).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amāre, <i>to love</i> : 1st root, <i>ām</i> ; 2d, <i>āmāv</i> .	
PRESENT (1st root).	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Am-ō, <i>I love.</i>	1. Am-amūs, <i>we love.</i>
2. Am-as, <i>thou lovest.</i>	2. Am-ātis, <i>ye or you love.</i>
3. Am-āt, <i>he loves.</i>	3. Am-ant, <i>they love.</i>
IMPERFECT (1st root).	
Am-abām, <i>I was loving.</i>	Am-abamūs, <i>we were loving.</i>
Am-abas, <i>thou wast loving.</i>	Am-abātis, <i>ye or you were loving.</i>
Am-abāt, <i>he was loving.</i>	Am-abant, <i>they were loving.</i>
FUTURE (1st root).	
Am-abō, <i>I shall love.</i>	Am-abimūs, <i>we shall love.</i>
Am-abis, <i>thou wilt love.</i>	Am-abitis, <i>ye or you will love.</i>
Am-abit, <i>he will love.</i>	Am-abunt, <i>they will love.</i>

* The vowel is also generally considered common before these endings in the *future perfect*; the old grammarians, however, make it *long*.

PARADIGM—continued.

PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-i, <i>I loved or have loved.</i>	Amāv-īmūs, <i>we loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-istī, <i>thou lovedst or hast loved.</i>	Amāv-istīs, <i>ye or you loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-it, <i>he loved or has loved.</i>	Amāv-erunt (ērē), <i>they loved or have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērām, <i>I had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērāmūs, <i>we had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērās, <i>thou hadst loved.</i>	Amāv-ērāsīs, <i>ye or you had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērāt, <i>he had loved.</i>	Amāv-erant, <i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērīmūs, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
Amāv-ērīs, <i>thou will have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērītīs, <i>ye or you will have loved.</i>
Amāv-erūt, <i>he will have loved.</i>	Amāv-erint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

251. VOCABULARY.

Ad (<i>prep. with acc.</i>),	to.
Dūcērē, dux,	to lead (<i>duke</i>).
Hesternūs, ā, ūm,	of yesterday.
Incolūmīs, ē,	safe, uninjured.
Legātūs, ī,	ambassador (<i>legate</i>).
Mittērē, mīs,	to send. (<i>mission</i>).
Praemittērē,	to send before.
Primūs, ā, ūm,	first (<i>prime</i>).

252. Exercises.

(a) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvi. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavimus. 5. Urbem servāvi. 6. Cives incolūmes servavimus. 7. Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambītus accusaverātis. 8. Balbum capītis damnabitis.

9. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsīt. 11. Christiānus nemīnem violābit. 12. Nemīnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (*pl.*) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (*pl.*) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian⁷ to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

LESSON XLVI

Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.

253. PARADIGM of the Indicative Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>am, is, &c., loving.</i>				
	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Am-ō,	Mōn-eō,	Rēg-ō,	Aud-iō,
2.	Am-as,	Mōn-es,	Rēg-is,	Aud-is,
3.	Am-āt;	Mōn-ēt;	Rēg-it;	Aud-it;
P. 1.	Am-amūs,	Mōn-emūs,	Rēg-imūs,	Aud-imūs,
2.	Am-ātis,	Mōn-ētis,	Rēg-itīs,	Aud-itīs,
3.	Am-ant.	Mōn-ent.	Rēg-unt.	Aud-iunt.

PARADIGM—continued.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, did.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Am-abām,	Mōn-ēbām,	Rēg-ēbām,	Aud-iēbām,
2.	Am-abas,	Mōn-ēbās,	Rēg-ēbas,	Aud-iēbas,
3.	Am-abāt ;	Mōn-ēbāt ;	Rēg-ēbāt ;	Aud-iēbāt ;
P. 1.	Am-abamūs,	Mōn-ēbamus,	Rēg-ēbamūs,	Aud-iēbamūs,
2.	Am-abatīs,	Mōn-ēbatīs,	Rēg-ēbatīs,	Aud-iēbatīs,
3.	Am-abant.	Mōn-ēbant.	Rēg-ēbant.	Aud-iēbant.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will.*

S. 1.	Am-abō,	Mōn-ēbō,	Rēg-ām,	Aud-iām,
2.	Am-abīs,	Mōn-ēbīs,	Rēg-es,	Aud-iēs,
3.	Am-abīt ;	Mōn-ēbīt ;	Rēg-ēt ;	Aud-iēt ;
P. 1.	Am-abimūs,	Mōn-ēbimūs,	Rēg-emūs,	Aud-iēmūs,
2.	Am-abitīs,	Mōn-ēbitīs,	Rēg-ētīs,	Aud-iētīs,
3.	Am-abunt.	Mōn-ēbunt.	Rēg-ent.	Aud-ient.

PERFECT (2d root), *have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ī,	Mōnu-ī,	Rex-ī,	Audiv-ī,
2.	Amāv-istī,	Mōnu-istī,	Rex-istī,	Audiv-istī,
3.	Amāv-it ;	Mōnu-it ;	Rex-it ;	Audiv-it ;
P. 1.	Amāv-imūs,	Mōnu-imūs,	Rex-imūs,	Audiv-imūs,
2.	Amāv-istīs,	Mōnu-istīs,	Rex-istīs,	Audiv-istīs,
3.	Amāv-ērunt or ērē.	Mōnu-ērunt or ērē.	Rex-ērunt or ērē.	Audiv-ērunt or ērē.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *had.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērām,	Mōnu-ērām,	Rex-ērām,	Audiv-ērām,
2.	Amāv-ērās,	Mōnu-ērās,	Rex-ērās,	Audiv-ērās,
3.	Amāv-ērāt ;	Mōnu-ērāt ;	Rex-ērāt ;	Audiv-ērāt ;
P. 1.	Amāv-ērāmus,	Mōnu-ērāmus,	Rex-ērāmus,	Audiv-ērāmus,
2.	Amāv-ērātīs,	Mōnu-ērātīs,	Rex-ērātīs,	Audiv-ērātīs,
3.	Amāv-erant.	Mōnu-erant.	Rex-erant.	Audiv-erant.

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root), *shall or will have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērō,	Mōnu-ērō,	Rex-ērō,	Audiv-ērō,
2.	Amāv-eris,	Mōnu-eris,	Rex-eris,	Audiv-eris,
3.	Amāv-erit ;	Mōnu-erit ;	Rex-erit ;	Audiv-erit ;
P. 1.	Amāv-erimūs,	Mōnu-erimūs,	Rex-erimūs,	Audiv-erimūs,
2.	Amāv-eritīs,	Mōnu-eritīs,	Rex-eritīs,	Audiv-eritīs,
3.	Amāv-erint.	Mōnu-erint.	Rex-erint.	Audiv-erint.

PRONOUNS.

254. *Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns; as, *ěgŏ*, I; *tū*, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

1) *Substantive Pronouns*; as, *ěgŏ*, *tū*, &c.

2) *Adjective Pronouns*; as, *hīc*, this; *illē*, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: *ěgŏ*, I (*which is of course of the first person*); *tū*, thou (*second person*); and *suī*, of himself (*third person*). These from their signification are often called *Personal Pronouns*.

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.		
1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N. <i>Egŏ</i> , I.	<i>Tū</i> , thou.	} <i>Suī</i> , of himself, herself, itself. <i>Sibī</i> , to himself, &c. <i>Sē</i> , himself.
G. <i>Meī</i> , of me.	<i>Tuī</i> , of thee.	
D. <i>Mihī</i> , to or for me.	<i>Tibī</i> , to or for thee.	
A. <i>Mē</i> , me.	<i>Tē</i> , thee.	
V. <i>Mē</i> , with, &c. me.	<i>Tū</i> , O thou.	
	<i>Tē</i> , with thee.	<i>Sē</i> , with himself.
PLURAL.		
N. <i>Nŏs</i> , we.	<i>Vŏs</i> , ye or you.	} <i>Suī</i> , of themselves. <i>Sibī</i> , to themselves. <i>Sē</i> , themselves.
G. <i>Nostrŭm</i> , } of us. or <i>Nostri</i> , }	<i>Vestrŭm</i> , } of you. or <i>Vestri</i> , }	
D. <i>Nŏbis</i> , to us.	<i>Vŏbis</i> , to you.	
A. <i>Nŏs</i> , us.	<i>Vŏs</i> , you.	
V. <i>Nŏs</i> , O ye or you.	<i>Vŏs</i> , O ye or you.	
A. <i>Nŏbis</i> , with us.	<i>Vŏbis</i> , with you.	<i>Sē</i> , with themselves.

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*.

259. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ĕg,	to drive, to lead, to do.	
De (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from, concerning.	
Dedĕrĕ, dĕdid,	to surrender.	
Demonstrārĕ, av,	to show, to demonstrate	(<i>demonstration</i>).
Egĕ,	I.	
Errārĕ, av,	to err	(<i>error</i>).
Expōnĕrĕ, expōsū,	to set forth, to explain	(<i>expose</i>).
Fācĕrĕ, (iĕ), fĕc,	to make, to do, to act.	
Gratiā, ae,	gratitude, favor, <i>pl.</i> thanks.	
Gratias āgĕrĕ,	to give thanks.	
Itĕr, itinĕria, n.	journey, route	(<i>itinerant</i>).
Judicārĕ, av,	to judge	(<i>judicature</i>).
Occultārĕ, av,	to conceal	(<i>occultation</i>).
Poscĕrĕ, pōposc,	to demand.	
Rĕs, rĕi,	thing, affair, subject.	
Sĕd,	but.	
Sensūs, ūs,	feeling, perception	(<i>sense</i>).
Tu	thou, you.	

260. Exercises.

(a) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu iudico. 4. Ego misi viros: puĕros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocāvi. 6. Vos iudicavistis. 7. Nos iudicabĭmus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinĕra nostra servābat. 10. Fidem suam inviti servavĕrunt. 11. Agricōlae est laborāre. 12. Caius, ut demonstravĭmus, itinĕra nostra servābat. 13. Caesar servos poposcit. 14. Nos servos non poposcĭmus.

(b) 1. We have read your letters. 2. You were playing, but I was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (*to you*) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me

7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

LESSON XLVII.

Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.

261. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>may</i> or <i>can</i> .			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ēm,	Mön-eām,	Rëg-ām,	Aud-iām,
Am-ēs,	Mön-eās,	Rëg-as,	Aud-ias,
Am-ët ;	Mön-eät ;	Rëg-ät ;	Aud-iät ;
Am-ēmüs,	Mön-eāmüs,	Rëg-āmüs,	Aud-iāmüs,
Am-ëtis,	Mön-eätis,	Rëg-ätis,	Aud-iafis,
Am-ent.	Mön-eant.	Rëg-ant.	Aud-iant.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might</i> , <i>could</i> , <i>would</i> , or <i>should</i> .			
Am-arēm,	Mön-erēm,	Rëg-erēm,	Aud-irēm,
Am-arēs,	Mön-erēs,	Rëg-erēs,	Aud-irēs,
Am-arët ;	Mön-erët ;	Rëg-erët ;	Aud-irët ;
Am-arēmüs,	Mön-erēmüs,	Rëg-erēmüs,	Aud-irēmüs,
Am-arëtis,	Mön-erëtis,	Rëg-erëtis,	Aud-irëtis,
Am-arent,	Mön-erent.	Rëg-erent.	Aud-irent.
PERFECT (2d root), <i>may have</i> .			
Amav-ërim,	Mönu-ërim,	Rex-ërim,	Audiv-ërim,
Amav-ëris,	Mönu-ëris,	Rex-ëris,	Audiv-ëris,
Amav-ërit ;	Mönu-ërit ;	Rex-ërit ;	Audiv-ërit ;
Amav-ërimüs,	Mönu-ërimüs,	Rex-ërimüs,	Audiv-ërimüs,
Amav-ërltis,	Mönu-ërltis,	Rex-ërltis,	Audiv-ërltis,
Amav-ërint.	Mönu-ërint.	Rex-ërint.	Audiv-ërint.

PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amāv-issēm,	Mōnu-issēm,	Rex-issēm,	Audīv-issēm,
Amāv-issēs,	Mōnu-issēs,	Rex-issēs,	Audīv-issēs,
Amāv-issēt;	Mōnu-issēt;	Rex-issēt;	Audīv-issēt;
Amāv-issēmūs,	Mōnu-issēmūs,	Rex-issēmūs,	Audīv-issēmūs,
Amāv-issētīs,	Mōnu-issētīs,	Rex-issētīs,	Audīv-issētīs,
Amāv-issent.	Mōnu-issent.	Rex-issent.	Audīv-issent.

REM.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in *m*.

262. The subjunctive with *ūt* is used to express a result; e. g.,

Tantūm est frīgūs ūt nix nōn liquescāt.

The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with *ūt*, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying *so, such, so great, &c.*; thus, in the above example, it depends upon *tantūm* (*so great, or such*).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, *that* after *so, such, so great, &c.*, must be translated by *ūt*, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *present, perfect definite, or future*, it must be put in the *present* tense, unless it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the *perfect*; e. g.,

1. Tantā est puērī industriā ūt multā discāt.

The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

2. Nesciō quid dixērīt.

I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive *dixēt* (learns) is in the *present* tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of *est* (*pres.*) on which it depends, and in the second example *dixērīt* (he has said) is in the *perfect*, because it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by *nesciō* (i. e. *pres.*).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, it must be put in the *imperfect* tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the *pluperfect*, e. g.,

1. Tantă ărat puērī industriă ūt multă discērēt.

The boy's industry *was* so great that he *learned* much.

2. Nescīvī quid dixissēt.

I *did* not *know* what he *had* said.

REM.—The imperf. *discērēt* represents its action as *not completed*, while the pluperfect *dixissēt* represents its action as *completed*.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; e. g.,

In summō { on the highest mountain (*Lat. Id.*).

montē, { on the top of the mountain (*Eng. Id.*).

In mediis { in the middle waters (*Lat. Id.*).

ăquīs, { in the middle (or midst) of the waters
(*Eng. Id.*).

268. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, Alpiūm,

Conservăre, av,

Frangĕrĕ, frĕg,

Alps.

to preserve

to break.

(*conservative*).

Frigūs, ōris,	cold	(<i>frigid</i>).
Ibi,	there.	
Liquescēre, licū,	to melt	(<i>liquid</i>).
Mēdiūs, ā, ūm,	middle, midst of, middle of (267).	
Narē, av,	to swim.	
Nondūm,	not yet.	
Piscīs, īs, m.,	fish.	
Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, top (267)	(<i>summu</i>)
Tantūs, ā, ūm,	so great.	

269. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Venit ut me audiat. 2. Veni ut vos audiam. 3. Venērunt ut nos audiant. 4. Venērunt ut te audirent. 5. Ne violētis fidem. 6. In summo monte tantum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpibus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro vendat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendēres. 10. Avis in summa arbore cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepēram.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top¹⁰ of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle¹⁰ of the water.

LESSON XLVIII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.— Verbs in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns.

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the *i* in the penult is short; as, *căpimūs, căpiŭs*.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in *iŭ* of the Third Conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, to take; 1st root, căp; 2d, cĕp.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular.

Căp-iŭ, I take.

Căp-is, thou takest.

Căp-it, he takes.

Plural.

Cap-imūs, we take.

Cap-itis, ye or you take.

Cap-iunt, they take.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iĕbām, I was taking.

Căp-iēbas, thou wast taking.

Căp-iĕbāt, he was taking.

Căp-iĕbamūs, we were taking.

Căp-iĕbatis, ye or you were taking.

Căp-iĕbant, they were taking.

FUTURE.

Căp-iām, I shall take.

Căp-iēs, thou wilt take.

Căp-iēt, he will take.

Căp-iēmūs, we shall take.

Căp-iētis, ye or you will take.

Căp-ient, they will take.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Căp-iām, I may take.

Căp-ias, thou mayest take.

Căp-iāt, he may take.

Căp-iāmūs, we may take.

Căp-iatīs, ye or you may take.

Căp-iant, they may take.

REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, in verbs in *iō*, are entirely regular.

272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., *Substantive Pronouns* and *Adjective Pronouns*.

273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as *pronouns to supply the place of nouns*, and sometimes as *adjectives to qualify nouns*. These are divided into several classes.

274. *Demonstrative Pronouns*, so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

1. <i>Hic, this.</i>					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Hic,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hi,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
G. <i>Hujūs,</i>	<i>hujūs,</i>	<i>hujūs.</i>	<i>Hōrūm,</i>	<i>harūm,</i>	<i>hōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>
A. <i>Hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>haec.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Hōc,</i>	<i>hāc,</i>	<i>hōc.</i>	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>
2. <i>Illē, he or that.</i>					
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Illē,</i>	<i>illā,</i>	<i>illūd.</i>	<i>Illī,</i>	<i>illae,</i>	<i>illā.</i>
G. <i>Illūs,</i>	<i>illūs,</i>	<i>illūs.</i>	<i>Illōrūm,</i>	<i>illārūm,</i>	<i>illōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Illī,</i>	<i>illī,</i>	<i>illī.</i>	<i>Illīs,</i>	<i>illīs,</i>	<i>illīs.</i>
A. <i>Illūm,</i>	<i>illām,</i>	<i>illūd.</i>	<i>Illōs,</i>	<i>illas,</i>	<i>illā.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Illō,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illo.</i>	<i>Illīs,</i>	<i>illīs,</i>	<i>illīs.</i>
3. <i>Istē, that.</i>					
Istē, <i>that</i> , is declined like <i>illē</i> . It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.					

PARADIGMS—continued.

4. *Is, he or that.*(Less specific than *illā*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Is,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>id.</i>	<i>Ir,</i>	<i>eae,</i>	<i>eā.</i>
G. <i>Ejūs,</i>	<i>ejūs,</i>	<i>ejūs.</i>	<i>Eōrūm,</i>	<i>earūm,</i>	<i>eōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Ei,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ei.</i>	<i>Iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis.</i>
A. <i>Eūm,</i>	<i>eām,</i>	<i>id.</i>	<i>Eōs,</i>	<i>eas,</i>	<i>eā.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Eō,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>eō.</i>	<i>Iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis,</i>	<i>iis or eis.</i>

5. *Idēm, the same.*(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *is*.)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Idēm,</i>	<i>eādēm,</i>	<i>idēm.</i>	<i>Idēm,</i>	<i>eaedēm,</i>	<i>eādēm.</i>
G. <i>Ejusedēm,</i>	<i>ejusedēm,</i>	<i>ejusedēm.</i>	<i>Eōrundēm,</i>	<i>earundēm,</i>	<i>eōrundēm.</i>
D. <i>Eidēm,</i>	<i>eidēm,</i>	<i>eidēm.</i>	<i>Eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>
			<i>Iisdēm,</i>	<i>Iisdēm,</i>	<i>Iisdēm.</i>
A. <i>Eundēm,</i>	<i>eandēm,</i>	<i>idēm.</i>	<i>Eōsdēm,</i>	<i>eaedēm,</i>	<i>eādēm.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Eodēm,</i>	<i>eadēm,</i>	<i>eodēm.</i>	<i>Eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>	<i>eisdēm, or</i>
			<i>Iisdēm,</i>	<i>Iisdēm,</i>	<i>Iisdēm.</i>

275. VOCABULARY.

<i>Ab</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
<i>Castrā, ōrūm</i> (<i>plur.</i>),	camp.
<i>Cēlēritēr,</i>	quickly.
<i>Clēmētiā, ae,</i>	mildness, clemency.
<i>Confūgērē</i> (<i>iō</i>), <i>confūg,</i>	to flee for refuge.
<i>Cūm</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	with.
<i>Dimittērē, dīmīs,</i>	dismissa.
<i>Ex</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
<i>Impētūs, ūs,</i>	attack (<i>impetus</i>).
<i>Impērātā, ōrūm,</i>	commands.
<i>Lōcūs, i,</i>	place, position (<i>local</i>).
<i>Mōvērē, mōv,</i>	to move, to put in motion.

Postĕrā, ūm (<i>mas. not used</i>),	next, following.
Postŭlarĕ, av,	to demand.
Prōmittĕrĕ, prōmis,	to promise.
Prōmōvĕrĕ, prōmōv,	to move forward, to advance.
Vĕrō,	indeed, truly.

276. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent. 2. Idem facit Caesar. 3. Idem faciĕbant. 4. Ego vero istud non postŭlo. 5. Veni ut legĕrem. 6. Haec promisistis. 7. Eōdem die castra promōvit.

8. Hi primi (205) cum gladiis impĕtum fecērunt. 9. Illi imperāta celerĭter fecērunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidĕres. 13. Hunc capĭtis damnābunt. 14. Illos prodiōnis invĭti accusaverātis.

(b) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They will think little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

LESSON XLIX.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.

277. THE *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsĕ*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*;

it is also called an *adjunctive* pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, *Rōmūlūs ipsē*, Romulus himself; *tū ipsē*, you yourself.

278. *Ipsē*, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by *very*; as, *hōc ipsūm*, this *very* thing.

279. *Ipsē* is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Ipsē</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> ,	<i>ipsūm</i> .	<i>Ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsae</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> .
G. <i>Ipsīūs</i> ,	<i>ipsīūs</i> ,	<i>ipsīūs</i> .	<i>Ipsōrūm</i> ,	<i>ipsārūm</i> ,	<i>ipsōrūm</i> .
D. <i>Ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> ,	<i>ipsī</i> .	<i>Ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> .
A. <i>Ipsūm</i> ,	<i>ipsām</i> ,	<i>ipsūm</i> .	<i>Ipsōs</i> ,	<i>ipsās</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> .
V.					
A. <i>Ipsō</i> ,	<i>ipsā</i> ,	<i>ipsō</i> .	<i>Ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> ,	<i>ipsīs</i> .

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered *intensive* by annexing the syllable *mēt*; as, *ēgōmēt*, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, *isē* is used *intensively* in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

280. VOCABULARY.

Accēdērē, access,	to approach	(access).
At,	but, yet.	
Fortūnā, ae,	fortune.	
Fūgā, ae,	flight.	
Gēnūs, gēnērīs,	kind, nature.	
Iustūs, ā, ūm,	just, fair.	
Nūmērūs, ī,	number	(numerous).
Occultārē, āv,	to conceal	(occult).
Respondērē, respond,	to answer	(respond)
Usquē,	as far as; usque ad, even to.	

281. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitaverat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium

accessērant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eādem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar haec promīsit. 10. Ad haec legāti respondērunt.

(b) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (*ipsē*) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (*de*) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

LESSON L.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

282. THE *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Qui,	quae,	quōd.	Qui,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cui,	cui,	cui.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quā̄m,	quōd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā̄,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

283. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; as, *Puēr qui scribīt, the boy who writes.*

REM.—*Qui* is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent *puēr*; but it is in the *nominative* because it is the subject of *scribīt*, and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The *Interrogative* Pronouns, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except the forms *quīs*, *quīd*, as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>Quīs,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	<i>quīd.</i>	<i>Qui,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	<i>quae.</i>
G. <i>Cujūs,</i>	<i>cujūs,</i>	<i>cujūs.</i>	<i>Quōrūm,</i>	<i>quarūm,</i>	<i>quōrūm.</i>
D. <i>Cui,</i>	<i>cui,</i>	<i>cui.</i>	<i>Quībūs,</i>	<i>quībūs,</i>	<i>quībūs.</i>
A. <i>Quēm,</i>	<i>quām,</i>	<i>quīd.</i>	<i>Quōs,</i>	<i>quās,</i>	<i>quae.</i>
V.					
A. <i>Quō,</i>	<i>quā,</i>	<i>quō.</i>	<i>Quībūs,</i>	<i>quībūs,</i>	<i>quībūs.</i>

285. VOCABULARY.

<i>Ampliūs</i> (<i>comp. adv. from ample</i>),	more, further.
<i>Cōgītārē, av,</i>	to think, to think about.
<i>Cōgnoscērē, cōgnōv,</i>	to ascertain.
<i>Cōrām,</i>	openly, in person.
<i>Exspectārē, av,</i>	to await, expect.
<i>Nuntiūs, i,</i>	messenger.
<i>Parvūs, ā, ūm,</i>	little, small.
<i>Perspīcērē, perspex,</i>	to perceive, to see.
<i>Planē,</i>	plainly.
<i>Vōcārē, av,</i>	to call.

286. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Quis nos vocābit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogītas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eādem quae ex nuntiis cognovērat, coram perspīcit. 7. In qua urbe vivīmus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecērat, fecērunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius expectes? 10. Quam urbem habēmus? 11. Quis Caium proditionis (214) accūsāt? 12. Quem ambītus accusavisti? 13. Carthagīne invītus manēbo. 14. Bienium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texistis.

(b) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

LESSON LI.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.

287. *Nē* and *nūm* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

288. If *ně* is used, it must *follow* and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a *not* in the sentence, it must be joined to the *nōn* (not), making *nonnē*; e. g.,

1. Scribit*nē* Caiūs? Is Caius writing?
2. Nonnē scribīt? Is not he writing?
3. Nūm scribīt Caiūs? Is Caius writing? [No.]

REM.—A question with *ně* and without *nōn* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nōn* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *nūm* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3); thus, Nūm scribīt Caiūs, means, *Caius is not writing, is he?*

289. VOCABULARY.*

Aspergērē, aspers, <i>sprinkle</i> .	accus., <i>to, into, against</i> ; with
Arā, ae, <i>altar</i> .	abl., <i>in</i> .
Auctumnūs, i, <i>autumn</i> .	Nidūs, i, <i>nest</i> .
Construērē, construx, <i>to build, construct</i> .	Pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm, <i>dangerous</i> .
Immergērē, immers, <i>to plunge into</i> .	Sanguis, inis, <i>m., blood</i> .
In (<i>prep. with accus. or abl.</i>), with	Sēmēn, inis, <i>seed</i> .
	Spargērē, spars, <i>to scatter, to sow</i> .
	Victimā, ae, <i>victim</i> .

290. Exercises.

(In construing, omit the *ně* or *nūm*, but make the sentence a question.)

- (a) 1. Scripsitne Caius?† 2. Num scripserātis? 3. Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet? 4. Quid rides?

* It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert *key-words* in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

† In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (*does, do, did, has, have*) must be put before the subject; as, Scripsitne puer, *Has the boy written?* or, *Did the boy write?*

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculōsum est hiēme se in flumen immergēre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. *Agricolārūm est*⁷ semīna auctumno spargēre. 9. Nonnē in *summīs Alpībūs* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguīne aram aspersit. 11. Nonnē boni est pastōris⁷ tondēre oves, non deglubēre?

(b) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds. 4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. 6. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. 7. They *have come* to condemn (239) you *to death*.⁸ 8. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?¹⁰ [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shear-ing the sheep?

LESSON LII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.

291. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdām*, a certain one; *āliquis*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquis*, if any, &c.

292. The *indefinite pronouns* are compounds either of *quīs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

293. *Quīdām*, compounded of *quī* and *dām*, is declined like *quī*, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes *quīd* (instead of *quōd*) when used *substantively* and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *quendām* (not *quem-dām*), *quōrundām* (not *quōrundām*).

294. *Aliquīs*, compounded of *aliūs* and *quīs*, is declined like *quīs*, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has *āliquōd* adjective, and *āliquīd* substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has *āliquā*. It is declined as follows :

SINGULAR.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	Aliquīs,	āliquā,	āliquōd or āliquīd.
G.	Alicujūs,	ālicujūs,	ālicujūs.
D.	Alicui,	ālicui,	ālicui.
A.	Aliquēm,	āliquām,	āliquōd or āliquīd.
V.			
A.	Aliquō,	āliqua,	āliquō.
PLURAL.			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	Aliqui,	āliquae,	āliquā.
G.	Aliquōrūm,	āliquārūm,	āliquōrūm.
D.	Aliquībūs,	āliquībūs,	āliquībūs.
A.	Aliquos,	āliquas,	āliquā.
V.			
A.	Aliquībūs,	āliquībūs,	āliquībūs.

295. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *noštēr, nostrā, nostrūm*; *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

296. VOCABULARY.

A (*prep. with abl.*), *from*.Argentūm, *silver*.Conciliūm, *council*.Continēre, *to restrain, confine*.Culpā, *fault*.Indicēre, *indix, to declare (as war)*.Infligēre, *infix, inflict*.Sī, *if*.Ullūs, *ā, ūm (113, REM.), any*.Vulnūs, *ēris, wound*.

297. Exercises.

(a) 1. Alīquid tempōris invītus amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te alīqui timuērunt. 3. Alīquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continēbat. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem misit. 6. Legāti ad concilium venērunt. 7. Christianōrum est fidem suam servāre. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violāre. 9. Rex urbi bellum indicet. 10. Anguis agricōlae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa discērēs.

(b) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. 7. Who has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

LESSON LIII.

Verb.—Essē.

298. THE verb *essē*, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive

voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

299. Paradigm of the verb *Essē*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Sūm, I am.</i>	<i>Sūmūs, we are.</i>
<i>Es, thou art.</i>	<i>Estis, you are.</i>
<i>Est, he is.</i>	<i>Sunt, they are.</i>

IMPERFECT (*was*).

<i>Erām, I was.</i>	<i>Erāmūs, we were.</i>
<i>Erās, thou wast.</i>	<i>Erātis, you were.</i>
<i>Erāt, he was.</i>	<i>Erant, they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

<i>Erō, I shall be.</i>	<i>Erimūs, we shall be.</i>
<i>Eris, thou wilt be.</i>	<i>Eritis, you will be.</i>
<i>Erit, he will be.</i>	<i>Erunt, they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

<i>Fui, I have been.</i>	<i>Fuimūs, we have been.</i>
<i>Fuisti, thou hast been.</i>	<i>Fuistis, you have been.</i>
<i>Fuit, he has been.</i>	<i>Fuerunt, } they have been.</i>
	<i>Fuerē, }</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

<i>Fuērām, I had been.</i>	<i>Fuērāmūs, we had been.</i>
<i>Fuēras, thou hadst been.</i>	<i>Fuērātis, you had been.</i>
<i>Fuērāt, he had been.</i>	<i>Fuērant, they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

<i>Fuērō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>Fuērīmūs, we shall have been.</i>
<i>Fuēris, thou will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērītis, you will have been.</i>
<i>Fuērīt, he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint, they will have been.</i>

PARADIGM—continued.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).*Singular.*Sim, *I may be.*Sis, *thou mayest be.*Sit, *he may be.**Plural.*Simūs, *we may be.*Sitīs, *you may be.*Sint, *they may be.*IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).Essēm, *I might be.*Essēs, *thou mightest be.*Essēt, *he might be.*Essēmūs, *we might be.*Essētīs, *you might be.*Essent, *they might be.*PERFECT (*may have been*).Fuērīm, *I may have been.*Fuērīs, *thou mayest have been.*Fuērīt, *he may have been.*Fuērīmūs, *we may have been.*Fuērītīs, *you may have been.*Fuērint, *they may have been.*PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).Fuissēm, *I might have been.*Fuissēs, *thou mightest have been.*Fuissēt, *he might have been.*Fuissēmūs, *we might have been.*Fuissētīs, *you might have been.*Fuissent, *they might have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

Es, *or estō, be thou.*Estō, *let him be.*Estē *or estōtē, be ye.*Suntō, *let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,

Essē, *to be.*

PERFECT,

Fuissē, *to have been.*

FUTURE,

Fūtūrūs (ā, ūm) essē, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,

Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, *about to be.*

* The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb *essē*, although the nature and use of the *imperative* and *infinitive* moods, and of the *participles*, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place.

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

302. The *Participle* is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle *fütürüs*, *ä*, *üm*, is declined like the adjective *bönüs*, *ä*, *üm* (112).

303. VOCABULARY.

Absolvĕrĕ, absolvi, *to acquit*.

Admiratiō, ōnis, *admiration*.

Brĕvis, ĕ, *short*.

Dignüs, ä, üm, *worthy*.

Ferrüm, i, *iron*.

Häbitärĕ, av, *to dwell, to inhabit*.

Hönör, ōris, *honor*.

Incertüs, ä, üm, *uncertain*.

Indignüs, ä, üm, *unworthy*.

Mens, tis, *mind, reasoning faculty*.

Opüs, ĕris, *work*.

Tranquillüs, ä, üm, *calm, tranquil*.

Utilis, ĕ, *useful*.

304. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum* iter facĕre. 3. Puer in horto fuĕrat. 4. His honoribus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indignus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opĕra sunt admiratiōne digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improbörum' est malos laudäre. 10. Venimus ut patriae tuae leges violarĕmus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaverätis.

(b) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

* Est tuüm, it is yours; i. e., your duty.

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

LESSON LIV.

Verb Essē, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.

305. ADJECTIVES in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e. g.,

Altūs,	altiōr,	altissimūs.
High,	higher,	highest.

REM.—In this example, *altūs* (high) is said to be in the *positive degree*; *altiōr*, in the *comparative*; and *altissimūs*, in the *superlative*.

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
<i>Examples.</i>	<i>Root.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>	
Altūs (<i>high</i>),	alt.		altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissimūs (ā, ūm).	
Mītis (<i>mild</i>),	mīt.		mītiōr (iōr, iūs),	mītissimūs (ā, ūm).	

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rīmūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherrīmūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *ūs* form the superlative by adding *issimūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

<i>Fácilis (easy),</i>	<i>faciliör,</i>	<i>facillimüs.</i>
<i>Difficilis (difficult),</i>	<i>difficiliör,</i>	<i>difficillimüs.</i>
<i>Similis (like),</i>	<i>similiör,</i>	<i>simillimüs.</i>
<i>Dissimilis (unlike),</i>	<i>dissimiliör,</i>	<i>dissimillimüs.</i>

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

<i>Bönüs (good),</i>	<i>méliör,</i>	<i>optimüs.</i>
<i>Mälüs (bad),</i>	<i>pejör,</i>	<i>possimüs.</i>
<i>Magnüs (great),</i>	<i>majör,</i>	<i>maximüs.</i>
<i>Parvüs (little),</i>	<i>mínör,</i>	<i>mínimüs.</i>
<i>Multüs (much),</i>	<i>plüs (pl. plurës, } } plurä),</i>	<i>plürimüs.</i>

307. The conjunction *quäm* is generally used with the comparative degree, unless one of the persons or things compared is the subject of the proposition, in which case *quäm* is usually omitted, though sometimes used; e. g.,

1. *Nihl est clémentiä dīvinīüs.*
Nothing is more godlike than clemency.
2. *Euröpä mīnör est quäm Asiä.*
Europe is smaller than Asia.

308. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The comparative degree without *quäm* is followed by the ablative.

REM. 1.—Clémentiä in the first example is in the ablative by this rule.

REM. 2.—If *quäm* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes: thus, *Asiä*, which follows *quäm* in the second example, is in the same case as *Euröpä*, which precedes.

309. The conjunction *quäm* before a superlative renders it intensive; e. g.,

<i>Quäm plürimī,</i>	{ <i>Eng. Id.</i> As many as possible. <i>Lat. Id.</i> As the most.
<i>Quäm maxīmüs,</i>	{ <i>Eng. Id.</i> { As great as possible. { The greatest possible. <i>Lat. Id.</i> As the greatest.

REM.—The superlative may often be best translated by *very* instead of *most*; as, *mons altissimū*, a very high mountain.

310. VOCABULARY.

Amplūs, ā, ūm, *extensive, great.*

Argentūm, ī, *silver.*

Cēlēbēr, brīs, brē, *celebrated.*

Cicēro, ōnīs, *Cicero.*

Divinūs, ā, ūm, *divine.*

Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, *future.*

Grāvīs, ē, *heavy.*

Impendērē, to overhang, to threaten.

Ignorātiō, ōnīs, *ignorance.*

Mālūm, ī, *an evil.*

Prētiosūs, ā, ūm, *valuable.*

Quām, *than.*

Quām maxīmūs, ā, ūm, *as great as possible.*

Rātiō, ōnīs, *reason.*

Scientiā, ae, *knowledge.*

Turrīs, īs, *tower.*

311. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aurum gravius est argento. 2. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia. 3. Difficillimum est iram placare. 4. In summis montibus¹ acerrimum est frigus.

5. Veniunt ut copias comparent. 6. Venit ut quam maximas² copias compararet. 7. Turris est altior muro. 8. Quid est in homine ratione divinius? 9. Mons altissimus impendebat. 10. Cicero erat orator celeberrimus. 11. Romani ampliores copias expectabant.

(b) 1. Gold is very heavy. 2. Gold is more valuable than silver. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver. 4. You are building a very high wall. 5. You have your wall higher than your tower. 6. We shall raise very large forces. 7. You have raised larger forces than the king himself.

8. We have come to raise as large forces as possible.³ 9. Let them raise as large forces as possible. 10. It is⁴ very easy to keep one's word. 11. It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger. 12. Who was more celebrated than Cicero? 13. He was a very celebrated orator.

LESSON LV.

Compounds of Essě.—Comparison of 'Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.

312. THE compounds of *essě* (except *possě*, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple *essě*. *prōdessě*, however (compounded of *prō*, for, and *essě*, to be), inserts *d* after *prō* in those parts which in the simple verb begin with *e*; as,

Pres. Prōsūm, prōdēs, prōdest, prōsūmūs, prōdestīs, prōsunt, &c.

313. The compounds of *essě* (except *possě*) are followed by the dative, as they take *only* an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihĭ prōfuĭt.

It profited me (*did good to me*).

REM.—Here it is plain that *mihĭ* (to me) is not a *direct*, but only an *indirect* object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending *ūs* into *ē*; as,

Adj. Altūs, altiōr (iūs *neut.*), altissīmūs.

Adv. Altē, altiūs, altissīmē,

NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(a) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.,

- 1) *Cardinals*, which denote simply the *number* of objects; as, *ūnūs*, one; *duō*, two, &c.
- 2) *Ordinals*, which denote the *position* of any object in a *series*; as, *prīmūs*, first; *secundūs*, second.
- 3) *Distributives*, which denote the *number* of objects which are taken *at a time*; as, *singulī*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

(b) Numeral adverbs; as, *sēmēl*, once; *bīs*, twice.
(See Numerals, 583.)

316. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Mīlēs fortitēr pugnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*. *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*.

317. (a) The first three cardinals, *ūnūs*, *duō*, and *trēs*, are declined as follows:

1. Paradigm of *ūnūs*, *one*.

N. Unūs,	unā,	unūm.	Unī,	unae,	unā.
G. Unūs,	unūs,	unūs.	Unōrum,	unarum,	unorum.
D. Unī,	unī,	unī.	Unīs,	unīs,	unīs.
A. Unū,	unā,	unūm.	Unōs,	unas,	unā.
V. Unē,	unā,	unūm.			
A. Unō,	una,	unō.	Unīs,	unīs,	unīs.

REM.—The plural of *unūs*, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

2. Paradigms of *duō*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*.

N. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs (m. & f.),	triā.
G. Duōrum,	duarum,	duorum.	Trium,	triūm.
D. Duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	Tribus,	tribus.
A. Duos and } duō,	duas,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
V. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
A. Duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	Tribus,	tribus.

REM.—*Trēs* is declined like the plural of *tristis* (158).

(b) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs* (112); e. g., *dūcentī*, ae, ā, *two hundred*.

318. Ordinals are declined like *bōnūs*. Distributives are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those*; e. g.,

Māris sūpĕrfīciēs majōr est quā́m terrae.

The sea's surface is greater than (*that**) of the land.

REM.—Hence, in translating English into Latin, *that*, *those*, after *than*, should be omitted.

320. VOCABULARY.

Concertārē, av, <i>to contend, quarrel.</i>	Omnīnō, <i>altogether, in all.</i>
Contīnuūs, ā, ūm, <i>successive.</i>	Prōdessē, prōfu, <i>to do good, to profit.</i>
Dēcēm, <i>ten.</i>	Prōducērē, prōdux, <i>to lead forward or out.</i>
Dēcīmūs, ā, ūm, <i>tenth.</i>	Quartūs, ā, ūm, <i>fourth.</i>
Duō, duae, duō, <i>two.</i>	Quinquē, <i>five.</i>
Intēressē, interfu, <i>to be engaged in.</i>	Sūpĕrfīciēs, ei, <i>surface.</i>
Mārē, īs, <i>sea.</i>	Terrā, ae, <i>earth.</i>
Obessē, obfu, <i>to be prejudicial to.</i>	

321. Exercises.

(a) 1. Milītes fortīter pugnant. 2. Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnāvērunt. 3. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 4. Erant omnīno itinēra duo. 5. Caesar *quam max-*

* Here *that* stands for *the surface*.

īmas copias comparavērat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praeditus, Romae habitat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurimis profuit. 9. Christianorum est avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis interfuerat. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maris. 12. Caesar decimam legionem misit.

(b) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those^a of the fourth. 7. Anger has often *been prejudicial* to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

LESSON LVI.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.

322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting upon some object; as, Pătēr filiūm dōcēt, *the father teaches his son*; it is then said to be in the *Active Voice*.
- 2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, Filiūs ā pătrē dōcētūr, *the son is taught by his father*; it is then said to be in the *Passive Voice*.

REM.—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice: we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending *ūr* to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the *t* in the singular is long, except from *ū* in the third conjugation, and from *abi* and *ebi*.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT (1st root), <i>is, are loved, &c.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-āt,	Mön-ēt,	Rëg-īt,	Aud-īt,
Am-ātūr.	Mön-ētūr.	Rëg-ītūr.	Aud-ītūr.
Am-ant,	Mön-ent,	Rëg-unt,	Aud-iunt,
Am-antūr.	Mön-entūr.	Rëg-untūr.	Aud-iuntūr.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>was, were loved, &c.</i>			
Am-ābāt,	Mön-ēbāt,	Rëg-ēbāt,	Aud-iēbāt,
Am-ābātūr.	Mön-ēbātūr.	Rëg-ēbātūr.	Aud-iēbātūr.
Am-ābant,	Mön-ēbant,	Rëg-ēbant,	Aud-iēbant,
Am-ābantūr.	Mön-ēbantūr.	Rëg-ēbantūr.	Aud-iēbantūr.
FUTURE (1st root), <i>shall or will be loved.</i>			
Am-ābit,	Mön-ēbit,	Rëg-ēt,	Aud-iēt,
Am-ābitūr.	Mön-ēbitūr.	Rëg-ētūr.	Aud-iētūr.
Am-ābunt,	Mön-ēbunt,	Rëg-ent,	Aud-ient,
Am-ābuntūr.	Mön-ēbuntūr.	Rëg-entūr.	Aud-ientūr.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT (1st root), <i>may or can be loved.</i>			
Am-ēt,	Mön-eāt,	Rëg-āt,	Aud-iāt,
Am-ētūr.	Mön-eātūr.	Rëg-ātūr.	Aud-iātūr.
Am-ent,	Mön-eant,	Rëg-ant,	Aud-iant,
Am-entūr.	Mön-eantūr.	Rëg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.

PARADIGM—continued.

IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might, could, &c., be loved.</i>			
Am-ārēt,	Mōn-ērēt,	Rēg-ērēt,	Aud-irēt,
Am-ārētūr.	Mōn-ērētūr.	Rēg-ērētūr.	Aud-irētūr.
Am-arent,	Mōn-arent,	Rēg-arent,	Aud-irent,
Am-arentūr.	Mōn-arentūr.	Rēg-arentūr.	Aud-irentūr.

325. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive (322); e. g.,

Act. Illi Balbūm furti accūsant.
They accuse Balbus of theft.

Pass. Balbūs āb illis furti accūsātūr.
Balbus is accused of theft by them.

REM.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with *āb* (ab illis) *a*, however, is often used before a consonant.

326. VOCABULARY.

Cōlērē, n, <i>to cultivate, to practise.</i>	Rhēnūs, i, <i>Rhine, a river.</i>
Demonstrārē, av, <i>to show.</i>	Rēliquūs, ā, ūm, <i>the rest, the other</i>
Interficērē (īf), interfēc, <i>to kill, to</i>	Sex, six.
<i>slay.</i>	Sūpra, <i>above.</i>
Mittērē, mis, <i>to send.</i>	Tangērē, tētīg, <i>to touch, reach.</i>
Prō (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), <i>for, before.</i>	Unūs, ā, ūm, <i>one, single, single one.</i>

327. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur. 3. Legātos ad Caesārem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesārem mittentur. 5. Mittantur legāti. 6. Reliquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capitis damnābunt. 8. Caius capitis damnabitur. 9. Haec civitas Rhenum tangit. 10. Haec civitas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnibus colātur.

(b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. He is accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

LESSON LVII

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.

328. THE tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb *esse* (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (ă, ūm), and is declined like *bōnūs*.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

- 1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings, *āt*, *īt*, and *ūt*; e. g.,

Amārē,	ăm,	ămāt.
Mōnērē,	mōn,	mōnīt.
Audīrē,	aud,	audīt.

- 2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of *t*, or sometimes *s* (especially to the *t*-sounds).

- a) Any *p*-sound before *t* is *p* (i. e., *pt* or *bt* becomes *pt*).
 b) Any *k*-sound before *t* is *c* (i. e., *ct*, *gt*, or *qt* becomes *ct*).
 c) *D*, and sometimes *g*, is dropped before *s* (see 208, c, and 211).

Scribĕrĕ, scrib, script (*b* changed to *p*).

Rĕgĕrĕ, rĕg, rect (*g* changed to *c*).

Claudĕrĕ, claud, claus (*d* dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future* of the indicative of the verb *essĕ* and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect† subjunctive of *essĕ*.

PARADIGM.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amārĕ.	Mōnĕrĕ.	Rĕgĕrĕ.	Audirĕ.
1st root, <i>ām</i> ,	1st root, <i>mōn</i> ,	1st root, <i>rĕg</i> ,	1st root, <i>aud</i> ,
3d " <i>āmāi</i> .	3d " <i>mōnīi</i> .	3d " <i>rect</i> .	3d " <i>audīi</i> .
INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PERFECT (<i>has been or was loved, &c.</i>).			
S. Amatūs† est,	Mōnītūs est,	Rectūs est,	Auditūs est,
P. Amatī† sunt.	Mōnītī sunt.	Rectī sunt.	Auditī sunt.

* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

‡ These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like *bōnūs* (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (*had been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērāt,	Mōnītūs ērāt,	Rectūs ērāt,	Auditūs ērāt,
P.	Amāti ērant.	Mōnīti ērant.	Recti ērant.	Auditi ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērit,	Mōnītūs ērit,	Rectūs ērit,	Auditūs ērit,
P.	Amāti ērunt.	Mōnīti ērunt.	Recti ērunt.	Auditi ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*may have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs sīt,	Mōnītūs sīt,	Rectūs sīt,	Auditūs sīt,
P.	Amāti sint.	Mōnīti sint.	Recti sint.	Auditi sint.

PLUPERFECT (*might have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs essēt,	Mōnītūs essēt,	Rectūs essēt,	Auditūs essēt,
P.	Amāti essent.	Mōnīti essent.	Recti essent.	Auditi essent.

333. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, av, at, <i>to value, to prize.</i>	Interficērē (ið), fēc, fecit, <i>to kill.</i>
Collōquiūm, i, <i>conference, meeting.</i>	Intērim, <i>in the mean time, meanwhile.</i>
Conspicērē (ið), conspex, <i>con-</i> <i>spect, to see, discover.</i>	Lenis, ē, <i>mild, merciful.</i>
Dēcernērē, decrēv, decrēt, <i>to de-</i> <i>cree.</i>	Litērae, arūm (pl.), <i>letter, epistle.</i>
Dicērē, dix, dict, <i>to say, speak,</i> <i>name.</i>	Mittērē, mis, misa, <i>to send.</i>
Fācērē (ið), fēc, fact, <i>to do, make,</i> <i>perform.</i>	Pārārē, av, at, <i>to prepare.</i>
Frangērē, frēg, fract, <i>to break, to</i> <i>violate.</i>	Quintūs, ū, ūm, <i>fifth.</i>
	Sēcundūs, ū, ūm, <i>second.</i>
	Sententiā, ae, <i>sentiment.</i>
	Supplicatiō, onis, <i>thanksgiving.</i>
	Viginti, <i>twenty.</i>

Amātūs est, *he has been loved.*

Amātā est, *she has been loved.*

Amātūm est, *it has been loved.*

Amāti sunt, *they (men) have been loved.*

Amatae sunt, *they (women) have been loved.*

Amātā sunt, *they (things) have been loved.*

334. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Supplicatio decreta est. 2. Mors omnibus parata est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mittuntur ad Caesarem a Balbo litterae. 7. Interim milites legionum duarum ab hostibus conspiciebantur. 8. Milites legionum duarum conspecti sunt.

(b) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar. 2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle. 3. Money has ever been valued very highly. 4. Has not money always been valued very highly? 5. Were not the laws broken at Athens? 6. The laws had been broken at Rome. 7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference. 8. Messengers had been sent to the king. 9. A soldier was sent to the king.

LESSON LVIII.

Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.

335. THE persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

- a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding *r*; e. g.,
Amō (*act.*), *āmōr* (*pass.* *r* added).
Amābām (*act.*), *āmābār* (*pass.* *m* dropped, *r* added).
- b) The second persons, by changing *s* (sing.) into *rīs* (or *rē*), and *tis* (plur.) into *mīnī*; e. g.,

Amās (act.), *ămārīs (or rē) (pass. s changed to rīs or rē).*

Amătīs (act.), *ămămīnī (pass. tīs “ “ mīnī).*

c) The third persons, by adding *ūr* (323); e. g.,

Amăt (act.), *ămătūr (pass. ūr added).*

Amant (act.), *ămantūr (pass. ūr added).*

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Act.	ș, m,	s,	t,	mūs,	tīs,	nt,	
Pass.	r.	rīs, rē.	tūr.	mūr.	mīnī.	ntūr.	

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

<i>3d Pers.</i>	<i>1st Pers.</i>	<i>2d Pers.</i>
<i>Sing. Amătūr,</i>	<i>ămōr (vowel changed)</i>	<i>ămārīs (rē).</i>
<i>Plur. Amantūr,</i>	<i>ămāmūr,</i>	<i>ămămīnī.</i>

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of *esse* into the first and second; e. g.,

<i>Sing. Amătūs est,</i>	<i>ămătūs sūm,</i>	<i>ămătūs ēs.</i>
<i>Plur. Amătī sunt,</i>	<i>amătī sūmūs,</i>	<i>ămătī estīs.</i>

339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>am loved, &c.</i>			
<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
Am-ör,	Mön-eör,	Rög-ör,	Aud-iör,
Am-äris (rë),	Mön-ëris (rë),	Rög-ëris (rë),	Aud-iëris (rë),
Am-ätür ;	Mön-ëtür ;	Rög-ütür ;	Aud-itür ;
Am-amür,	Mön-emür,	Rög-imür,	Aud-imür,
Am-aminä,	Mön-ëminä,	Rög-iminä,	Aud-iminä,
Am-anür.	Mön-entür.	Rög-untür.	Aud-iuntür.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>was loved, &c.</i>			
Ali-abär,	Mön-ebär,	Rög-ebär,	Aud-iëbär,
Am-abäris (rë),	Mön-ebäris (rë),	Rög-ebäris (rë),	Aud-iëbäris (rë),
Am-abätür ;	Mön-ebätür ;	Rög-ebätür ;	Aud-iëbätür ;
Am-abamür,	Mön-ebamür,	Rög-ebamür,	Aud-iëbamür,
Am-abaminä,	Mön-ebaminä,	Rög-ebaminä,	Aud-iëbaminä,
Am-abantür.	Mön-ebantür.	Rög-ebantür.	Aud-iëbantür.
FUTURE (1st root), <i>shall or will be loved.</i>			
Am-abör,	Mön-ebör,	Rög-är,	Aud-iär,
Am-abëris (rë),	Mön-ebëris (rë),	Rög-ëris (rë),	Aud-iëris (rë),
Am-abütür ;	Mön-ebütür ;	Rög-ëtür ;	Aud-iëtür ;
Am-abimür,	Mön-ebimür,	Rög-emür,	Aud-iëmür,
Am-abiminä,	Mön-ebiminä,	Rög-ëminä,	Aud-iëminä,
Am-abuntür.	Mön-ebuntür.	Rög-entür.	Aud-iëntür.
PERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and süm*</i>), <i>was or have been loved.</i>			
Amät-üs süm,*	Mönit-üs süm,	Rect-üs süm,	Audit-üs süm,
Amät-üs ës,	Mönit-üs ës,	Rect-üs ës,	Audit-üs ës,
Amät-üs est ;	Mönit-üs est ;	Rect-üs est ;	Audit-üs est ;
Amät-i sümüs,	Mönit-i sümüs,	Rect-i sümüs,	Audit-i sümüs,
Amät-i estis,	Mönit-i estis,	Rect-i estis,	Audit-i estis,
Amät-i sunt.	Mönit-i sunt.	Rect-i sunt.	Audit-i sunt.
PLUPERFECT (3d root, <i>perf. part. and ërämf</i>), <i>had been loved.</i>			
Amät-üs ërämf,†	Mönit-üs ërämf,	Rect-üs ërämf,	Audit-üs ërämf,
Amät-üs ërás,	Mönit-üs ërás,	Rect-üs ërás,	Audit-üs ërás,
Amät-üs ërät ;	Mönit-üs ërät ;	Rect-üs ërät ;	Audit-üs ërät ;
Amät-i ërämus,	Mönit-i ërämus,	Rect-i ërämus,	Audit-i ërämus,
Amät-i ëratīs,	Mönit-i ëratīs,	Rect-i ëratīs,	Audit-i ëratīs,
Amät-i ërant.	Mönit-i ërant.	Rect-i ërant.	Audit-i ërant.

* Fui is sometimes used instead of süm (331, N.).

† Fuërämf is sometimes used instead of ërämf (331, N.).

PARADIGM—continued.

FUTURE PERFECT (3d root, perf. part. and *ērō**), shall or will have been loved, &c.

Amāt-ūs ērō,*	Mōnīt-ūs ērō,	Rect-ūs ērō,	Audit-ūs ērō,
Amāt-ūs ēris,	Mōnīt-ūs ēris,	Rect-ūs ēris,	Audit-ūs ēris,
Amāt-ūs ērit;	Mōnīt-ūs ērit;	Rect-ūs ērit;	Audit-ūs ērit;
Amāt-I ērimūs,	Mōnīt-I ērimūs,	Rect-I ērimūs,	Audit-I ērimūs,
Amāt-I ēritīs,	Mōnīt-I ēritīs,	Rect-I ēritīs,	Audit-I ēritīs,
Amāt-I ērunt.	Mōnīt-I ērunt.	Rect-I ērunt.	Audit-I ērunt.

340. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē, av, at, to accuse.

Admōnērē, u, it, to admonish, warn.

Bēnē, well.

Carthaginiensis, is, a Carthaginian.

Clipeūs, I, shield.

Damnārē, av, at, to condemn.

Discērē, didic, to learn.

Dōnārē, av, at, to give, present.

Excitārē, av, at, to excite, arouse.

Finirē, iv, it, to finish.

Graeci, ōrūm, the Greeks.

Hastā, ae, spear.

Laudārē, av, at, to praise.

Mēnsīs, is, m., month.

Mutārē, av, at, to change.

Nōvembēr, brīs (abl. i), November.

Pugnārē, av, at, to fight.

Punirē, iv, it, to punish.

Sūpērārē, av, at, to surpass, conquer, to go over.

341. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis. 2. Finītur labor agricolae mense Novembri. 3. Vos laudamini, puēri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo et hasta, si bene pro patria pugnāverō. 5. Admonebēris, ne iram excites.¹ 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthaginienses et Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 8. Proditōnis accusāti estis. 9. Ambītus accusāti sumus.

(b) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

* Fuērō is sometimes used instead of ērō (381, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death? (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8. Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

LESSON LIX.

Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.

342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), <i>may or can be loved, &c.</i>			
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ēr,	Mōn-eār,	Rēg-ār,	Aud-iār,
Am-ēris (rē),	Mōn-eāris (rē),	Rēg-āris (rē),	Aud-iāris (rē),
Am-ētūr;	Mōn-eātūr;	Rēg-atūr;	Aud-iatūr;
Am-ēmūr,	Mōn-eāmūr,	Rēg-amūr,	Aud-iamūr,
Am-ēminī,	Mōn-eāminī,	Rēg-amīnī,	Aud-iamīnī,
Am-entūr.	Mōn-eantūr.	Rēg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.
IMPERFECT (1st root), <i>might, could, &c., be loved, &c.</i>			
Am-arēr,	Mōn-erēr,	Rēg-ērēr,	Aud-irēr,
Am-arēris (rē),	Mōn-erēris (rē),	Rēg-erēris (rē),	Aud-irēris (rē),
Am-arētūr;	Mōn-erētūr;	Rēg-erētūr;	Aud-irētūr;
Am-arēmūr,	Mōn-erēmūr,	Rēg-erēmūr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Am-arēminī,	Mōn-erēminī,	Rēg-erēminī,	Aud-irēminī,
Am-arentūr.	Mōn-erentūr.	Rēg-erentūr.	Aud-irentūr.
PERFECT (3d root— <i>perf. part. and sim or fuērīm</i>), <i>may have been loved, &c.</i>			
Amāt-ūs sim,	Mōnīt-ūs sim,	Rect-ūs sim,	Audit-ūs sim,
Amāt-ūs sis,	Mōnīt-ūs sis,	Rect-ūs sis,	Audit-ūs sis,
Amāt-ūs sit,	Mōnīt-ūs sit;	Rect-ūs sit;	Audit-ūs sit;
Amāt-i simūs,	Mōnīt-i simūs,	Rect-i simūs,	Audit-i simūs,
Amāt-i sitis,	Mōnīt-i sitis,	Rect-i sitis,	Audit-i sitis,
Amāt-i sint.	Mōnīt-i sint.	Rect-i sint.	Audit-i sint.

PARADIGM—continued.

PLUPERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and* *essēm or fuissēm*), *might have been loved, &c.*

Amat-ūs essēm,	Mōnīt-ūs essēm,	Rect-ūs essēm,	Audit-ūs essēm,
Amat-ūs essēs,	Mōnīt-ūs essēs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Audit-ūs essēs,
Amat-ūs essēt;	Mōnīt-ūs essēt;	Rect-ūs essēt;	Audit-ūs essēt;
Amat-I essēmūs	Mōnīt-I essēmūs	Rect-I essēmūs	Audit-I essēmūs
Amat-I essētīs,	Mōnīt-I essētīs,	Rect-I essētīs,	Audit-I essētīs,
Amat-I essent.	Mōnīt-I essent.	Rect-I essent.	Audit-I essent.

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to separate from*, or *deprive of*, are followed by the *ablative* in addition to the *accusative* of the direct object; e. g.,

Mē lūcē prīvant.

They deprive me of light.

344. VOCABULARY.

Adulatīō, ōnis, *flattery.*

Contra (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*

Dēcipērē (īd), dēcēp, dēcēpt, *to deceive.*

Fraudārē, av, at, *to defraud.*

Fūgērē (īd), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee.*

Grānūm, ī, *grain, grain of corn.*

Imprūdēns, tīs, *inconsiderate, imprudent.*

Nēquidēm,* *not even.*

Paupēr, ēris, *a poor man.*

Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge.*

Praebērē, ū, it, *to furnish, offer.*

Præpārārē, av, at, *to prepare.*

Princeps, principīs, *chief, leader.*

Privārē, av, at, *to deprive.*

Sancirē, sanx, sanct, *to enact, confirm.*

Sēnectūs, utīs, *f. old age.*

Servārē, av, at, *to observe, keep.*

Spēciosūs, ā, ūm, *plausible, specious.*

Tām, *so.*

Verbūm, ī, *word.*

Vivērē, vix, vict, *to live.*

345. Exercises.

(a) 1. Non sum tam imprūdēns ut verbis speciōsis decipiar.¹ 2. Bonae leges a principibus sanciantur. 3.

* The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, *nē grānō quidēm*, not even a grain.

Praeparētur anīmus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur senectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. 7. Paupēres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus^s te furti accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romae vivit.

(b) 1. Be not deceived. 2. Let him not be deceived. 3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys fled that¹ they might not be punished. 7. Do not defraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded. 9. May they never be defrauded by you. 10. You shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

LESSON LX.

Imperative Mood—Active and Passive.

346. THE *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an *exhortation*, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it must be expressed in Latin by *nē* (instead of *nōn*); e. g.,

Nē peccātē, do not sin.

REM.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may also be expressed by the present subjunctive (231).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by the addition of the following endings:

ACTIVE.				
	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 2.	a or atð,	ē or ētð,	ē or itð,	I or itð.
3.	atð,	ētð,	itð,	itð.
P. 2.	atē, atotē,	ētē, etotē,	itē, itotē,	itē, itotē.
3.	antð,	entð,	untð,	iuntð.
PASSIVE.				
S. 2.	arē or atōr,	ērē or ētōr,	ēre or itōr,	Irē or itōr.
3.	atōr,	ētōr,	itōr,	itōr.
P. 2.	amīnī,	ēmīnī,	īmīnī,	Imīnī.
3.	antōr,	entōr,	untōr,	iuntōr.

849. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

CONJUGATION I.	
Active.	Passive.
S. 2. Am-a or ām-atð, love thou, do thou love.	Am-arē or ām-atōr, be thou loved.
3. Am-atð, let him love.	Am-ātor, let him be loved.
P. 2. Am-ātē or ām-atotē, love ye, do ye love.	Am-amīnī, be ye loved.
3. Am-antð, let them love.	Am-antōr, let them be loved.
CONJUGATION II.	
S. 2. Mōn-ē or mōn-ētð, advise thou.	Mōn-ērē or mōn-ētōr, be thou advised.
3. Mōn-ētð, let him advise.	Mōn-ētōr, let him be advised.
P. 2. Mōn-ētē or mōn-ētōtē, advise ye	Mōn-ēmīnī, be ye advised.
3. Mōn-entð, let them advise.	Mōn-entōr, let them be advised.
CONJUGATION III.	
S. 2. Rēg-ē or rēg-itð, rule thou.	Rēg-ērē or rēg-itōr, be thou ruled.
3. Rēg-itð, let him rule.	Rēg-itōr, let him be ruled.
P. 2. Rēg-itē or rēg-itōtē, rule ye.	Rēg-īmīnī, be ye ruled.
3. Rēg-untð, let them rule.	Rēg-untōr, let them be ruled.
CONJUGATION IV.	
S. 2. Aud-I or aud-itð, hear thou.	Aud-Irē or aud-itōr, be thou heard.
3. Aud-itð, let him hear.	Aud-itōr, let him be heard.
P. 2. Aud-itē or aud-itōtē, hear ye.	Aud-īmīnī, be ye heard.
3. Aud-iuntð, let them hear.	Aud-iuntōr, let them be heard.

REM.—The second forms of the imperative (*to, tota, nte, etc.*) are used in laws, rules, and other formal expressions of duty or permission.

350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, and.

Américanūs, ā, ūm, American.

Audirē, iv, it, to hear, listen to.

Castigarē, av, at, to chastise.

Cogitarē, av, at, to think about.

Compescērē, compescu, to restrain, repress.

Conjux, ūgīs, m. or f., husband, wife, spouse.

Conservārē, av, at, to preserve.

Consiliūm, i, advice, instruction.

Corrumpērē, corrup, corrupt, to mislead, corrupt.

Dēfendērē, defend, defēns, to defend.

Dēglubērē, dēglups, dēglupt, to flay, to skin.

Exorārē, av, at, to supplicate.

Libērī, ōrūm (pl.), children.

Nōmēn, inīs, name.

Perniciēs, ēī, destruction.

Pōpūlus, i, people.

Quē (joined to the word it connects), and.

Ruērē, ru, ruīt (or rūt), to rush.

Sālūs, utīs, f., safety.

Scribērē, scrips, script, to write.

Sēpēlirē, iv, sēpult, to bury, inter.

Tondērē, tōtōnd, tons, to shear, shave.

Vestēr, trā, trūm, your.

Vidērē, vid, vīs, to see.

351. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium ne accusā. 2. Balbum ne accusāte. 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesce iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab imprōbis ne corrumpītor. 11. De vobis ac de libēris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjūges, libēros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.

(b) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.

Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

LESSON LXI.

Infinitive Mood.

352. THE *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the *supine* and *future act. participle* (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The *future active participle* and the *active supine* are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of *ūrūs* (ă, ūm); as, *ămāt* (3d root), *ămătūrūs* (ă, ūm); and the latter by the addition of *ŭm*; as, *ămāt*, *ămătŭm*.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

- 1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Act.	ărě,	ērě,	ěrě,	irě.
Pass.	ārī,	ērī,	ī,	irī.

- 2) The perfect active, from the second root by

the addition of the ending *issē*; and the *perfect passive* from the perfect participle and *essē*.

- 3) The future active, from the *future active participle* and *essē*; and the *future passive* from the *supine* and *īrī*.

356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

CONJ. I.			
	Active.		Passive.
Pres.	Am-āre, <i>to love.</i>		Am-ari, <i>to be loved.</i>
Perf.	Amāv-issē, <i>to have loved.</i>		Amāt-ūs essē, <i>to have been loved.</i>
Fut.	Amāt-urūs essē, <i>to be about to love.</i>		Amāt-ūm irī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>
CONJ. II.			
Pres.	Mōn-ēre, <i>to advise.</i>		Mōn-eri, <i>to be advised.</i>
Perf.	Mōnu-issē, <i>to have advised.</i>		Mōnit-ūs essē, <i>to have been advised.</i>
Fut.	Mōnit-urūs essē, <i>to be about to advise.</i>		Mōnit-ūm irī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>
CONJ. III.			
Pres.	Rēg-ēre, <i>to rule.</i>		Rēg-i, <i>to be ruled.</i>
Perf.	Rex-issē, <i>to have ruled.</i>		Rect-ūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
Fut.	Rect-urūs essē, <i>to be about to rule.</i>		Rect-ūm irī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>
CONJ. IV.			
Pres.	Aud-irē, <i>to hear.</i>		Aud-iri, <i>to be heard.</i>
Perf.	Audiv-issē, <i>to have heard.</i>		Audit-ūs essē, <i>to have been heard.</i>
Fut.	Audit-urūs essē, <i>to be about to hear.</i>		Audit-ūm irī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

357. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Vīdēt tē essē beātūm.

He sees that you are happy.

REM. 1.—The accusative *se* is the subject of *esse*.

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

358. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

1. Cūpīt sǎpĕrĕ.

He desires *to be wise*.

2. Spĕrāt sē victūrūm essē.

He hopes *that he shall live*.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus *sǎpĕrĕ* (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what?) *to be wise*.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must agree in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*. Thus, in the second example, *victūrūm* is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with *se*, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction *that*, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

360. VOCABULARY.

Certūs, ū, uan, *certain*.

Clēmērs, tīs, *mild, merciful*.

Convertĕrĕ, convert, convers, *to turn, convert*.

Cūpĕrĕ (iō), cūpiv (or i), cūpīt, *to desire*.

Dividĕrĕ, divīs, divīs, *to divide*.

Dōcĕrĕ, u, doct, *to teach*.

Ocūlūs, I, eye.

Par, partīs, part.

Peccārĕ, av, at, *to sin*.

Praedā, ae, booty.

Sǎpĕrĕ, iv, i, or u, *to be wise*.

Spĕrārĕ, av, at, *to hope*.

Tīmĕrĕ, ū, *to fear*.

Trēs, triā, *three*.

Vendĕrĕ, vendid, vendit, *to sell*.

361. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividere. 2. Nunquam utile est peccare. 3. Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docemus pueros ut sapere discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victuros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.

(b) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.³ 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death*.

LESSON LXII.

Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

362. THE participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the *present* and *future* in the *active* voice, and the *perfect* and *future* in the *passive*.

364. The participles are formed as follows:

- 1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

1.	2.	3.	4.
ans,	ens,	ens,	iens,

to the first root; as,

Amans (loving), *mōnens*, *rēgens*, *audiens*.

- 2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūrūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as, *Amātūrūs* (about to love), *mōnītūrūs*, *rectūrūs*, *audītūrūs*.

- 3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (*ā*, *ūm*) (302); as, *Amātūs* (loved), *mōnītūs*, *rectūs*, *audītūs*.

- 4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings :

1.	2.	3.	4.
andūs,	endūs,	endūs,	iendūs,

to the first root; as,

Amandūs (deserving to be loved), *mōnendūs*, *rēgendūs*, *audiendūs*.

365. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.
The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*; a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by 'about to (write);' or, 'going to (write).'

* 366. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called *absolute*); e. g.,

Caesār, victīs hostībūs,	{	<i>Eng. Id.</i> , Caesar having conquered his enemies.
		<i>Lat. Id.</i> Caesar his enemies being conquered.

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered his enemies, { Caesar, quum vicissēt hostēs.
Caesar, victis hostibus.

368. VOCABULARY.

Aequitas, atis, *equity, justice.*

Angustiae, arum (pl.), *a narrow pass, defile.*

Cānērē, cecin, cant, *to sing.*

Compellērē, compul, compuls, *to drive, compel.*

Constituērē, constitu, constitut, *to arrange, constitute.*

Deprēhendērē, deprēhend, deprēhens, *to seize, catch.*

Dēvincērē, devic, devict, *to conquer.*

Exclamārē, av, at, *to cry out, exclaim.*

Immergērē, immers, immers, *to plunge into, immerse.*

Lūdērē, las, lus, *to play, to sport.*

Mānērē, mans, mans, *to remain.*

Quum, *when.*

Viōlārē, av, at, *to violate, to break.*

369. Exercises.

(a) 1. In via ludentem puerum vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprehendimus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compulit. 4. Fracto pueri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legibus, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa aequitate res constituit.

(b) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water.¹⁰ 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

LESSON LXIII.

Gerunds and Supines.

370. THE *Gerund* is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in *ing* in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andī,	endī,	endī,	iendī.

Amandī (of loving), *mōnendī*, *rēgendī*, *audiendī*.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Amandī,</i>	<i>of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>to or for loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Amandūm,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Amandō,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

REM.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

374. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Intēr lūdendūm.

(*During playing.*)

While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two *supines*; one in *ūm* and one in *ū*.

376. The *supines* are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e. g.,

Amātūm (to love), mōnītūm, rectūm, audītūm.

Amātū (to be loved), mōnītū, rectū, audītū.

REM.—The supine in *ūm* is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in *ū* by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, *factūm* means *for doing*, and *factū* in doing.

377. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ūm* follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e. g.,

Mittīt lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm.

He sends ambassadors *to sue for peace*.

378. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ū* is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *agreeable* or *disagreeable*, &c.; e. g.,

Diffīcīlē est dīctū.

It is difficult *to say*.

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *participation*, *recollection*, *fulness*,

and the *like*, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e. g.,

Cūpidūs laudīs, *desirous of praise.*

380. VOCABULARY.

Aquari, at, <i>to bring water.</i>	Pabulātum (sup.), <i>to forage.</i>
Aquatūm (sup.), <i>to bring water.</i>	Pētērē, iv (i), it, <i>to seek, ask, sue for.</i>
Auxilium, i, <i>aid, help.</i>	Rōgarē, av, at, <i>to ask.</i>
Cūpidūs, ā, ūm, <i>desirous, desirous of.</i>	Sumptūs, ūs, <i>expense.</i>
Jucundūs, ā, ūm, <i>pleasant, delightful.</i>	Sūpervacuūs, ā, ūm, <i>unnecessary</i>
Mirabilia, ē, <i>wonderful.</i>	Venari, at, <i>to hunt.</i>
Pabulāri, at, <i>to forage.</i>	Venātūm (sup.), <i>to hunt.</i>
	Vitarē, av, at, <i>to avoid, shun.</i>

381. Exercises.

(a) 1. Cupīdi sunt docendi. 2. Num puēri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupīdus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Jucundum est audītu. 7. Difficile est factu. 8. Mittantur legāti pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempōris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum temporis ludendo amittēmus.

(b) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent *a hunting*. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. 9. Ambassadors have been sent *to ask peace*. 10. It is difficult *to say*. 11. It is wonderful *to tell*. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion *to bring water*?

LESSON LXIV.

Participle in dus.

382. INSTEAD of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with a noun; e. g.,

(*Eng.*) The intention of *writing* a letter.

(*Lat.*) Consiliūm scribendi epistolām.

(or) Consiliūm scribendae epistolae.*

383. Thus, then, *epistolā scribendā* may be declined throughout.

Sing.

N. Epistolā scribendā, *a letter to be written.*

G. epistolae scribendae, *of writing a letter.*

D. epistolae scribendae, *to or for writing a letter.*

Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, *to write a letter (or for writing a letter).*

Abl. epistolā scribendā, *by writing a letter.*

Plur.

N. epistolae scribendae, *letters to be written.*

G. epistolārum scribendarum, *of writing letters.*

D. epistolis scribendis, *to or for writing letters.*

Acc. (ad) epistolas scribendas, *to write letters (or for writing letters).*

Abl. epistolis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

384. VOCABULARY.

Adjumentum, i, *aid, help.*

Arripere (iū), arripu, arrept, *to snatch, seize.*

Athēnae, arūm, *Athens, city of Greece.*

Augere, aux, auct, *to increase.*

* The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is 'the design of (— about) a letter to be written.'

Cupidiōr, ōis (comp.), *fonder*.
 Elēgantiā, ae, *elegance*.
 Emērē, em, empt, *to buy, purchase*.
 Exercērē, exercu, exercīt, *to practise, exercise*.
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage*.
 Hābērē, ū, it, *to have, enjoy*.

Lēgērē, lēg, lect, *to read*.
 Obtīnērē, obtīnu, obtent, *to obtain, acquire*.
 Occasīd, ōis, *opportunity*.
 Pēritūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in*.
 Rēgērē, rex, rect, *to govern, rule*.
 Stūdīosūs, ā, ūm, *very fond*.

385. Exercises.

(a) 1. Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtutis* arripiēbat. 2. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum* quam *legendōrum*. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio *exercendae virtutis* arripiātur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtutis* a Christiāno arripi. 6. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur *legendis oratoribus et poētis*. 7. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad *obtinendam sapientiam*.

(b) 1. The boy is very fond of *writing letters*. 2. He was very fond of *hearing the orator*. 3. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. 4. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. 5. Ambassadors are sent *to beg for peace*. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to *sue for peace*. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

LESSON LXV.

First Conjugation.

386. VOCABULARY.*

Adeō, *so, in such a manner.*Cantarē, *av, at, to sing.*Certamēn, *inīa, contest.*Crabrō, *ōnīs, wasp.*Intēr, *between, during.*Intēr ambūlandūm, *while walking*Irritarē, *av, at, to trouble, irritate.*Ornarē, *av, at, to adorn.*Robustūs, *ā, ūm, robust, strong.*Spōliarē, *av, at, to rob of, despoil.*387. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sapiēntis est supervacuos sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irrītātē (347). 4. Irritasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certamīne superavērit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrīmis florībus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, iudīces, privabītis? 10. Violātis patriae legībus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(b) 1. It is the duty of a Christian^r to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

* Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

LESSON LXVI.

Second Conjugation.

388. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs which signify *to ask, demand, or teach*, together with *cēlārē* (to conceal), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e. g.,

Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flāgītābāt.

Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

389. VOCABULARY.*

Divitiācūs, i, *Divitiacus*, man's
name.

Impērārē, av, at, *to command*,
give commands.

Jūbērē, juss, juss, *to direct, or-*
der.

Mordērē, mōmord, mors, *to bite.*

Parērē, ū, it, *to obey.*

Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, *inclined to.*

Sanārē, av, at, *to cure, reform.*

Tācērē, ū, it, *to be silent, to pass*
over in silence.

390. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis?
3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa tacui: multa sa-
nāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sunt. 6. Pareat
ānīmus: non impēret. 7. Caesar Divitiācum ad se
vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puēros haec
docēbant. 10. Puēri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puē-
rum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(b) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear
the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you
teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep?
6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite
you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

* The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm. See 589.

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

LESSON LXVII.

Third Conjugation.

891. RULE OF SYNTAX.—After verbs of motion :

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmām vēnīrē, *to come to Rome.*

- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmā vēnīrē, *to come from Rome.*

REM.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(Review Paradigm 590.)

892. VOCABULARY.

Agērē, ēg, act, *to do, act.*

Committērē, mī, miss, *to engage.*

Curārē, av, at, *to attend to, cause, &c.*

Dārē, dēd, dāt, *to give.*

Equēs, itīs, *horseman.*

Gratiā, ae, *favor ; pl., thanks.*

Gratias āgērē, *to give thanks, to thank.*

Injuriā, ae, *injury, wrong done.*

Pons, tis, m., *bridge.*

Responsū, i, *answer, reply.*

Tēgērē, tex, tect, *to cover, conceal.*

Unquām, *ever.*

893. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

nemo unquam me ullius injuriae accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumine faciendum curavit. 6. Equites proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. 9. Legatos ad eum miserunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus (382).

(b) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

LESSON LXVIII.

Fourth Conjugation.

(Review Paradigm 591.)

394. VOCABULARY.

Antea, *before.*

Captivus, ā, ūm, *captive.*

Claudērē, claus, claus, *to shut.*

Fundus, i, *estate, farm.*

Hannibal, ālis, *Hannibal.*

Intra (*prep. with accus.*), *within.*

Italiā, ae, *Italy.*

Praeceptum, i, *precept, instruction.*

Praesens, tis, *present.*

Succurrērē, curr, curs, *to aid, succor.*

Tarentum, i, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*

Vetustus, ā, ūm, *old, ancient.*

395. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec ex captivis audiverat. 2. Venit sacerdos ut aram sanguine aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant antea, nunc praesentē vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes diviso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpibus superātis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanōrum vetustissīma, ne quis intra urbem sepelirētur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water? 2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

LESSON LXIX.

Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.

396. THE use of the *indirect object* has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

*To command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade.**

* See 643

REM. 1.—Vācārē (*to have leisure*) and nūbērē (*to marry, used of females*), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *impērārē* (*to command*) means *to give a command to*; *plācērē* (*to please*) *to give pleasure to*; and so of most, if not all, of the others.

397. VOCABULARY.

Ars, artīs, *art.*

Beatē, *happily.*

Crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt, *to believe, put confidence in.*

Cūpīditas, atīs, *desire, passion.*

Fāvērē, fāv, faut, *to favor.*

Ignoscērē, nōv, nōt, *to pardon.*

Indulgērē, induls, indult, *to indulge.*

Invidērē, vīd, vīs, *to envy.*

Nōcērē, nōcu, nōcīt, *to hurt.*

Parcērē, pēperc, parcīt, *to spare.*

Persuadērē, persuas, persuas, *to persuade.*

Rēsistērē, stīt, stīt, *to resist.*

Servirē, iv (i), it, *to serve, be a slave to.*

Stūdērē, u, *to study, strive for.*

Vācārē, av, at, *to have leisure for.*

398. Exercises.

(a) 1. Irae multos annos serviēras. 2. Regendis anīmi cupiditatībus studeāmus. 3. Caesar legendo libro vacābit. 4. Christiāni est patriae suae legībus parēre. 5. Ignosce mihi. 6. Nemo tibi credet. 7. Imprōbus patriae legībus non parēbit. 8. Num legībus parēbunt imprōbi, violāta fide? 9. Discant Christiāni anīmis suis imperāre. 10. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

(b) 1. I would have favored Caius. 2. You would have resisted anger. 3. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. 4. We would have indulged the desire. 5. I was hurting myself. 6. You were hurting me. 7. You had hurt Caius. 8. You had been-the-slave-of passion. 9. Do not be-the slave-of passion. 10. You were sparing the enemies. 11. *It is the duty of a Christian to envy nobody.* 12. Do not envy the good. 13.

It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

LESSON LXX.

Deponent Verbs.

399. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

400. *Deponent verbs* have all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Loquens, *speaking* ; 2) locūtus, *having spoken* ;
- 3) locutūrus, *about to speak* ; 4) loquendus, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *potiōr*, *vescōr*, *dignōr*, and their compounds, usually take the *ablative* ; e. g.,

Vōluptatē fruītūr, *he enjoys pleasure*.

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the *ablative of means* ; thus, *to enjoy pleasure*, is *to be delighted with pleasure*.

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, *forgetting*, and *pitying*, usually take the *genitive* of the object remembered, forgotten, &c. ; e. g.,

Rēmīniscōr bēnēficiī tuī, *I remember your kindness*.

REM.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying *to pity*, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

403. VOCABULARY.

Aliquandō, *some time or other.*
 Bēnēficiūm, I, *benefit.*
 Flagitiūm, I, *crime.*
 Fungī, funct, *to discharge.*
 Lōqui, locūt, *to speak.*
 Mālē, *badly.*
 Misēreri, misērīt, or misert, *to pity.*
 Oblivisci, oblit, *to forget.*

Odiūm, I, *hatred.*
 Officiūm, I, *duty.*
 Post (*prep. with accus.*), *after.*
 Pōtiri, pōtīt, *to get possession.*
 Rēcordari, at, *to remember, to recall to mind.*
 Sempiternūs, ā, ūm, *eternal.*
 Uti, ūs, *to use.*

404. Exercises.

. (a) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄erum. 2. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. 4. Vincāmus odium, pacēque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnibus vitae officiis fungitur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxērant.

(b) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered?* 8. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

* Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

LESSON LXXI.

Irregular Verbs.

405. THE irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of their roots, but also in the inflection of some of their tenses.

406. The irregular verb *possē* (to be able), compounded of *pōt* (*pōtīs*, able) and *essē* (to be), is conjugated like the simple *essē*, except,

- 1) *T* before *s* becomes *s*; as, *possūm* (*potsūm*).
- 2) The *f* in the second root is dropped; as, *pōtu* (*potfu*).
- 3) In the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* there is a contraction; as, *possē* (for *pōtessē*), *possēm* (for *pōtessēm*).

407. Paradigm.

Possē, to be able; 2d root, pōtu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt.*

Imp. *pōtērām; Fut. pōtērō; Perf. pōtu-i; Pluperf. pōtu-ērām; Fut. Perf. pōtu-ērō.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *possīm; Imp. possēm; Perf. pōtu-ērīm; Pluperf. pōtu-issēm.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *possē; Perf. pōtu-issē.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).

408. The various forms of *possē* are often best translated by the auxiliaries, *can*, *could*, &c.; e. g.,

Egō fācērē possūm, *I can do* (am able to do).

REM.—When a past tense of *possē* is thus translated by *could*, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egō fācērē pōtui, *I could have done*.

409. The irregular verb *vellē*, *to will*, or *be willing*, and its compounds, *nollē*, *to be unwilling* (from *nōn* and *vellē*), and *mallē*, *to wish rather*, *to prefer* (from *māg* [*māgīs*, more] and *vellē*), are conjugated as in the following:

410. Paradigms.

Vellē. 2d root, <i>vōlu</i> .	Nollē. 2d root, <i>nōlu</i> .	Mallē. 2d root, <i>malu</i> .
INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Vōlō, Vis, Vult; Vōlūmūs, Vultis, Vōlunt.	Nōlō, Nonvis, Nonvult; Nōlūmūs, Nonvultis, Nōlunt.	Malō, Mavis, Mavult; Malūmūs, Mavultis, Malunt.
IMPERFECT.		
Vōl-ēbām, bas, &c.	Nōl-ēbām, bas, &c.	Mal-ēbām, bas, &c.
FUTURE.		
Vōl-ām.	Nōl-ām.	Mal-ām.
PERFECT.		
Vōlu-i.	Nōlu-i.	Malu-i.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vōlu-ērām.	Nōlu-ērām.	Malu-ērām.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
Vōlu-ērō.	Nōlu-ērō.	Malu-ērō.

PARADIGMS—continued.

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Vēl-īm, is, &c.	Nōl-īm, is, &c. }	Mal-īm, is, &c.
IMPERFECT.		
Vell-ēm, es, &c.	Noll-ēm.	Mall-ēm.
PERFECT.		
Vōlu-ērīm.	Nōlu-ērīm.	Malu-ērīm.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vōlu-issēm.	Nōlu-issēm.	Malu-issēm.
IMPERATIVE.		
	Nōl-i or itō, Nōl-itē, itotē.	
INFINITIVE.		
Pres. Vellē.	Nollē.	Mallē.
Perf. Vōlu-issē.	Nōlu-issē.	Malu-issē.
PARTICIPLES.		
Vōlens.	Nōlens.	

411. VOCABULARY.

Animāl, alia, *animal*.Corrigērē, correx, *correct, to correct, reform*.Cōr, cordis, *n., heart*.Mallē, mālu, *to prefer wish rather*.Nollē, nōlu, *to be unwilling*.Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), *no, not any*.Occidērē, occid, occis, *to kill*.Possē, pōtu, *to be able*.Praetērītūs, ā, ūm, *past; praeteritā (neut. pl.), the past*.Prōbūs, ā, ūm, *honest, upright*.Scipiō, ōnis, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.Sinē, *without*.Vellē, vōlu, *to wish*.

412. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec facere possūmus. 2. Haec facere potu
isti. 3. Multum discere vult. 4. Nolui hoc facere

5. Praeterīta mutāre non possūmus. 6. Nullum animal quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest. 7. Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puēri regendae civitātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, animo impēra. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigēre volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidēre.

(b) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (*pl.*) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

LESSON LXXII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

413. THE irregular verb, *ferrē*, to bear, drops *e* between two *r*'s, as *ferrē* for *ferērē*, and *i* in the endings of the second and third sing. act., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third roots from other verbs.

414. Paradigm.

Ferrē, to bear; 2d root, *tūl*; 3d, *lāt*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ō, fer-s, fer-t, fer-īmus, fer-tis, fer-unt.	Fēr-īmus, fer-itis, fer-unt.	Fēr-ōr, fer-ris, fer-tūr, fēr-īmur, fēr-īmini, fēr-untūr.

PARADIGM—continued.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c.		Fēr-ēbār, barīs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, es, &c.		Fēr-ār, erīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

PERFECT

Tūl-i, isti, &c.		Lat-ūs sūm, es, &c.
------------------	--	---------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, as, &c.		Lat-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	--	------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.		Lat-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	--	-----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, as, &c.		Fēr-ār, arīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

IMPERFECT

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.		Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c.
-------------------	--	---------------------

PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.		Lat-ūs sim, &c.
---------------	--	-----------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.		Lat-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	--	-------------------

IMPERATIVE.

Fēr, or fertō,		Fer-rē, or fer-tōr,
Fer-tō;		Fer-tōr;
Fer-tē, or fer-tōtē.		Fēr-imini,
Fēr-untō.		Fēr-untōr.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rē,		Fer-ri,
<i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isse,		Lat-ūs essē,
<i>Fut.</i> Lat-ūrūs essē.		Lat-ūm iri.

PARADIGM—continued.

PARTICIPLES.			
<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Fēr-ens,	<i>Perf.</i>	Lat-ūs (ā, ūm).
<i>Fut.</i>	Lat-ūrūs (ā, ūm).	<i>Fut.</i>	Fēr-endūs (ā, ūm).
GERUND.			
Fēr-endī, dō, dūm, dō.			
SUPINE.			
Lat-ūm.		Lat-n.	

REM.—The compounds of *ferrē* are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, *fiērī*, *to become, be made*, is used as the passive of *făcērē*, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

416. Paradigm.

Fiērī, <i>to become, be made.</i>	
PRESENT.	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fiō, fis, fit, &c.	Fi-ām, fi-as, fi-āt, &c.
IMPERFECT.	
Fi-ēbām, ēbas, &c.	Fi-ērēm, ērēs, &c.
FUTURE.	
Fi-ām, ēs, &c.	
PERFECT.	
Fact-ūs sūm, &c.	Fact-ūs sīm, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	
Fact-ūs ērām, &c.	Fact-ūs essēm, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Fact-ūs ērō, &c.	
IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i> Fi, or fi-tō, Fi-tō.	<i>Plur.</i> Fitē, or fi-totē, Fi-untō.

PARADIGM—continued.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fiēri; *Perf.* Fact-ūs esse; *Fut.* Fact-ūm iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); *Fut.* Fāciendūs (ā, ūm).

417. VOCABULARY.

Afferre, attul, allat, to bring, to bring to.

Auctōr, ōris, author.

Cālāmitās, atis, misfortune, calamity.

Crebēr, brā, brūm, frequent, numerous.

Ferre, tūl, lat, to carry, bear, endure.

Fiēri, fact, to become, be made.

Inferre, intul, illat, to bring against, to wage.

Itērūm, again.

Rēferre, rētul, rēlat, to bring back, to relate.

Rumōr, ōris, report, rumor.

Tertiūs, ā, ūm, third.

Utilitās, atis, profit, advantage.

418. Exercises.

(a) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utilis est qui auctōri laudem fert, aliis utilitātem. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulērunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumōres afferebantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesārem relātis, itērūm ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(b) 1. He has been made king. 2. Dō you wish to become king? (No.) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (No.) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

LESSON LXXIII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

419. THE irregular verb, *īrě*, *to go*, is regular in the parts from the first root.

PARADIGM.

Irě, *to go*; 2d root, *iv*; 3d, *īt*.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Eđ</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>īt</i> ; <i>īmūs</i> , <i>ītīs</i> , <i>eunt</i> .	<i>Eām</i> , <i>eās</i> , &c.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Ibām</i> , <i>ibās</i> , &c.	<i>Irēm</i> , <i>Irēs</i> , &c.
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

FUTURE.

<i>Ibđ</i> , <i>ibīs</i> , &c.

PERFECT.

<i>Iv-i</i> , <i>iv-isti</i> , &c.	<i>Iv-ērīm</i> , <i>ērīs</i> , &c.
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Iv-ērām</i> , <i>ērās</i> , &c.	<i>Iv-issēm</i> , <i>issēs</i> , &c.
------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>Iv-ērđ</i> , <i>ērīs</i> , &c.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing. I, or itđ,</i> <i>Itđ.</i>	<i>Plur. Itě, or itótě,</i> <i>Euntđ.</i>
--	--

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irě; *Perf. Iv-issě*; *Fut. Itūrūs*, *essě*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen. euntīs*); *Fut. Itūrūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

GERUND.

Eundī, *dō*, *dūm*, *dō*.

SUPINE.

Itūm, *ītā*.

REM.—The compounds of *ire* are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect *ivi* into *ii*, and most of them want the supine.

420. *Edĕrĕ*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essĕ*. These are as follows:

<i>Regular.</i>		<i>Irregular.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edĕ, &c.</i>		<i>Es, est, estis.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Edĕ, &c.</i>		<i>Es, estĕ, estĕ, estote.</i>
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>Edĕrĕm, &c.</i>		<i>Essĕm, essĕs, &c.</i>
<i>Infĭn.</i>	<i>Edĕrĕ.</i>		<i>Essĕ.</i>

421. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The words *dŏmŭs* and *rŭs*, together with the genitives *hŭmĭ*, *bellĭ*, and *mĭlĭtĭae*, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

Dŏmŭm rĕdiit, he returned home.

422. VOCABULARY.

<i>Abirĕ, i, it, to go away, depart.</i>	<i>Irĕ, iv, it, to go.</i>
<i>Dŏmĭ (gen. of dŏmŭs), at home.</i>	<i>Mĭlĭtĭae (gen. of mĭlĭtia), on service, in the field.</i>
<i>Edĕrĕ (essĕ), ĕd, ĕs, to eat.</i>	<i>Nĕc—nĕc, neither—nor.</i>
<i>Et—ĕt, both—and.</i>	<i>Rĕdrĕ, i, it, to return.</i>
<i>Evŏlarĕ, ev, at, to fly away, to flee.</i>	<i>Rŭs, rŭris, field, country.</i>

423. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Fracto puĕri brachio, abit.* 2. *Fundo in tres partes divĭso, redit Athenas.* 3. *Puĕri venĕtum¹⁸ ivĕrunt.* 4. *Est (edit) ut vivat.* 5. *Nonne estis ut vivĕtis?* 6. *Abeat Romam.* 7. *Scriptis epistŏlis, abiĕrunt.* 8. *Balbus, quum manus in aquam immersisset, abiit.* 9. *Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit.* 10. *Caius nondum rure rediit.* 11. *Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediĕrunt.* 12. *Vĕnit sacerdos, ut aram florĭbus cingĕret.*

(b) 1. Caesar has not yet returned to Rome. 2. The

boys have gone a hunting.¹¹ 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus is at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

LESSON LXXIV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

424. THERE are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *Scriptūrūs sūm*, *I am about to write*.

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *Virtūs cōlendā est*, *virtue must be cultivated*.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dūs*; with other words it is generally governed in the *ablative* by *ā* or *āb*.

427. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives are followed by the *dative* of the object to which the quality

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērāt, peace was very acceptable to me.*

428. VOCABULARY.

Bibērē, bib, bibīt, to drink.

Delērē, ev, et, to destroy.

Ignārūs, ā, ūm, ignorant.

Inutilis, ē, useless, unfit for.

Mārīmūs, ā, ūm, marine, of the sea.

Prōpiōr, ūs (comp.), nearer.

Pūtārē, av, at, to think, regard.

Simplex, icis, simple.

Subvēnirē, vēm, vent, to go to the assistance of, to aid.

429. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae.* 2. *Exercenda est virtus.* 3. *Nonnē claudendae sunt urbis portae?* 4. *Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est.* 5. *Puer Romam mittendus est.* 6. *Pauperibus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus.* 7. *Quid factūri estis?* 8. *Simplex cibus puēris utilissimus est.* 9. *Luna terrae propior est quam sol.* 10. *Aqua marina inutilis est bibendo.* 11. *Inutiles sunt libri ignāro legendi.*

(b) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportunity of practising virtue must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

LESSON LXXV.

Impersonal Verbs.

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportēt, *it behooves.*

Taedet mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, *it is known.*

Juvāt, *it delights.*

432. The impersonal verb *licēt*, *it is lawful*, or *is allowed*, denotes *permission*, and may be translated by *may* and *might*; e. g.,

Licēt, *may* (it is allowed).

Licuīt, *might* (it was allowed).

Mihī irē licēt,	<i>I may go.</i>
Tībī irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illī irē licēt,	<i>He may go.</i>
Nōbīs irē licēt,	<i>We may go.</i>
Vōbīs irē licēt,	<i>You may go.</i>
Illīs irē licēt,	<i>They may go.</i>
Mihī irē licuīt,	<i>I might have gone.</i>
Tībī irē licuīt,	<i>You might have gone.</i>

REM. 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after *licēt*.

REM. 2.—The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after *licuīt*, *might*, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

(*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat. Id.*) It is allowed me to go.

(*Eng.*) I might have gone. (*Lat. Id.*) It was allowed me (*then*) to go.

433. The impersonal verb *oportet*, *it behooves*, denotes *duty* or *propriety*, and may be translated by *ought*; e. g.,

Mē irē oportet,	<i>I ought to go.</i>
Tē irē oportet, &c.	<i>You ought to go.</i>
Mē irē oportuit,	<i>I ought to have gone.</i>
Tē irē oportuit,	<i>You ought to have gone.</i>

REM. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

REM. 2.—The infinitive after *oportet* takes a subject accusative.

434.

English.

Latin Idiom.

(a) I repent of my folly,	It repents me of my folly.
I am vexed at my folly,	It vexes me of my folly.
I am ashamed of my folly,	It shames me of my folly.
I pity the poor,	It pities me of the poor.
I am weary of life,	It irks me of life.
(b) Mē meae stultitiae poenitēt,	I repent of my folly.
Mē meae stultitiae pigēt,	I am vexed at my folly.
Mē meae stultitiae pudēt,	I am ashamed of my folly.
Misērēt mē paupērū,	I pity the poor.
Taedēt mē vitae,	I am weary of life.

435. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *impersonal* verbs of feeling, *misērēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudēt*, *taedēt*, and *pigēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

436. VOCABULARY.

Adessē, ādfu, *to be present.*

Amicitia, ae, *friendship.*

Constāt, *it is known, is an admitted fact.*

Diligens, entis, *diligent.*

Hābitarē, av, at, *to inhabit, dwell.*

Immortalis, ē, *immortal.*

Licēt, *it is lawful, is permitted.*

Misĕrĕt, *one pities; tui mĕ misĕrĕt, I pity you.*

Oportĕt, *it behooves, one ought.*

Pigĕt, *one is grieved at; mĕ pigĕt, I am grieved.*

Poenitĕt, *it repents, one repents.*

Praestāt, *it is better.*

Rĕcipĕrĕ (ĭd), *cĕp, cept, to receive.*

Saepe, *often.*

Sŏnūs, *I, sound, noise.*

Tardūs, *ā, ūm, slow.*

Vĕlox, *ŏcis, swift.*

437. Exercises.

(a) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. 2. Saepe facĕre praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitāre? 4. Nonne licuit Athĕnis habitāre? 5. Nunquam licet peccāre. 6. Num licet Christiānis gloriāe servīre? 7. Puĕros oportet diligentes esse. 8. Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet. 9. Tui me misĕret; mei piget. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquĕre. 12. Miserĕre nostri. 13. Natūra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(b) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

LESSON LXXVI.

Impersonal Periphrastic.

438. THE second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

Mihī scribendū est,	<i>I must or should write.</i>
Tibī scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illī scribendū est,	<i>he must or should write.</i>
Nōbīs scribendū est,	<i>we must or should write.</i>
Vōbīs scribendū est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illīs scribendū est,	<i>they must or should write.</i>

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted:

- 1) When it means every body or people in general, though it may be translated by *we* or *you*; e. g.,

Edendū est, *we or you (every body) must eat.*

- 2) When the persons meant are not likely to be mistaken.

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its *agent* (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e. g.,

Crēdendū est Caiō.

We must believe Caius (not, Caius must believe).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with *a* or *ab*, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* was the *agent*.

441. VOCABULARY.

Etiam, *even.*

Laborare, *av, at, to labor, to.*

Mētuerē, *u, to fear.*

Sēnex, sēnīs, *an old man; pl. the aged.*

442. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senibus discendum est. 3. Imprōbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiēmē manendum est Carthagine. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discas. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discāmus? 10.

Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est imprōbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est anīno? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docēre. 16. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivēre.

(b) 1. We must dwell *in the country*. 2. We must remain *at home*. 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

LESSON LXXVII.

Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.

443. THOSE verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēditūr,	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tibī crēditūr,	<i>Thou art believed.</i>
Illī crēditūr,	<i>He is believed.</i>
Nōbīs crēditūr,	<i>We are believed.</i>
Vōbīs crēditūr,	<i>You are believed.</i>
Illīs crēditūr,	<i>They are believed.</i>

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., in urbē hābitāt, *he dwells in the city.*

445. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., Ad, adversūs, antē, apūd, circā or circūm, cīs or cītrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intēr, intrā, juxtā, ōb, pēnēs, pēr, pōnē, post, praetēr, prōpē, proptēr, sēcundūm, sūprā, trans, ultrā, versūs (*rare*).

446. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., A (āb or abs), absquē, cōrām, cūm, dē, ē or ex, pālām, prae, prō, sīnē, tēnūs.

447. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The five prepositions, clām, in, sūb, subtēr, and sūpēr, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

448 VOCABULARY.

Cīs, *on this side.*

Coelūm, I, *heaven, the heavens.*

Corām, *before, in the presence of.*

Ergā, *towards.*

Firmūs, ā, ūm, *firm, sure.*

Infrā, *below.*

Intrā, *within.*

Paucūs, ā, ūm, *few, little.*

Piētās, atīs, *loyalty, faithfulness.*

Prae, *before, in comparison with.*

Sūprā, *above.*

Terrā, ae, *the earth.*

449. Exercises.

(a) 1. Vobis non credītur. 2. Bonis credītur. 3. Gloriae tuae invidētur. 4. Irae resistitur. 5. Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. 6. Nulla est firma amicitia

inter malos. 7. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli cis Rhenum habitant. 9. Intra muros habitabat. 10. Coram populo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnitur. 12. Caecus de coloribus iudicare non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicimus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Conjunctions.

450. CONJUNCTIONS are merely *connectives*; as, *pāter et filiūs, the father and son*. Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tūm* or *quūm* followed by *tūm*, are *both—and*.

452. *Nōn solum—sed etiām, not only—but also*.

453. *Tām—quām,* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so—as; as—as.} \\ \text{as well—as.} \\ \text{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

454. *Etiām, even, also; etiām`atquē etiām, again and again; quōquē, also, too* (follows the word it belongs to).

455. Aut, *or*; aut—aut, vēl—vēl, *either—or*.
 Sive—sive, seu—seu, *either—or, whether—or*.
 456. Nec—nec, nequē—nequē, *neither—nor*.
 Vēl, *or, sometimes even*; with superlatives, *very, extremely, possible*.
 457. At, sed, autēm, vērūm, vērō, *but*.
 Attāmen, tāmen, vēruntāmen, *yet, but, but yet*.
 458. Atquī, *but, now* (as used in reasoning).
 459. Nām, namquē, ēnīm, *for*.
 Ergō, *therefore, then*.
 Igītūr, ideō, *therefore*.
 Itāquē, *accordingly, and so, therefore*.
 Quārē, *wherefore*.

460. VOCABULARY.

Amphībiūm, I, <i>amphibious animal</i> .	Nascī, nat, <i>to be born</i> .
Audax, acis, <i>audacious, daring</i> .	Nimiūs, ā, ūm, <i>excessive, too much</i> .
Dēterrēre, u, it, <i>to deter</i> .	Pūdōr, ōris, <i>shame, sense of shame</i> .
Inceptūm, I, <i>purpose, undertaking</i> .	Somnūs, I, <i>sleep</i> .
Impēdirē, IV, it, <i>to impede, hinder</i> .	

461. Exercises.

(a) 1. Et discet puer et docēbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagīne. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem mormordērat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Nec timīdus est, nec audax. 6. Nimiūs somnus neque anīmo, neque corpōri prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudōre impediōr. 8. Nihil labōras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphībia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.

(b) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage. 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con-

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome, but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son.

LESSON LXXIX.

Subjunctive Mood with ūt, nē, and quō.

462. UT with subj. { 1. *in order that, that, so that.*
 2. *the infin. (expressing purpose).*
 3. *as, with infinitive.*
 4. *granting that, although.*
 5. *that, after to fear that not.*

463. When *ūt* introduces a *purpose*, the subjunctive may be rendered by *may, might*; when it introduces a *consequence* (as after *so, such*), it may be rendered by the *indicative* or *infinitive*.

464. Ut with the indicative is *as, when, since, after, how.*

465. NĒ with subj. { 1. *lest, that not.*
 2. *not with the infinitive.*
 3. *not with the imperative.*
 4. *after to fear that.*

466. Nē with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply *not*; as, *nē scribās*, or *nē scribē*, do not write.

467. After verbs of fearing, *ut* and *nē* appear to change meanings; *ut*, *that—not*; *nē*, *that or lest*.

468. After verbs of fearing, the *subjunctive present* must generally be rendered by the *future*; as, *verēor ut faciām*, I fear that I shall not do, *verēor nē faciām*, I fear that I shall do.

469. *Quō* with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, *mēdicō aliquid dandū est, quō sūt studiōsiōr*, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.

470. VOCABULARY.

Cāverē, *cav*, *cant*, to take care,
be careful.

Cognītūs, *ā*, *ūm*, known.

Efficērē (*iō*), *fēc*, *fect*, to effect,
accomplish.

Fāmēs, *is*, hunger.

Incognītūs, *ā*, *ūm*, unknown.

Mēdicūs, *ī*, physician.

Mōnērē, *mōnu*, *mōnīt*, to advise,
warn.

Multitudo, *īnīa*, multitude.

Nūmērārē, *av*, *āt*, to number.

Quo, *that*, in order that.

Sātis (substantively), enough.

Stellā, *ae*, star.

Sustinērē, *tīnu*, tent, to sustain,
to endure.

Vērērī, *vērīt*, to fear.

471. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitudo est, ut numerārī non possint. 3. Mēdicis aliquid dandum est, quo sint studiosiōres. 4. Cave ne incognīta pro cognītis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effīci non possit. 6. Vereor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vereor ne brevi tempōre fames in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamīni ut pax firma esset.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

LESSON LXXX.

Subjunctive with quōmīnūs, quīn, and other Conjunctions.

472. AFTER verbs of *hindering*, quōmīnūs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by *from*, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

REM.—Quōmīnūs (quō and mīnūs) means literally, *by which the less*, or, *so that the less*; e. g.,

Caiō nihīl obstāt quōmīnūs sīt beātūs.

(*Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.*)

Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

473. Quīn with subj.

- | | |
|---|---|
| { | 1. <i>but</i> (as used after negatives). |
| | 2. <i>the relative with not.</i> |
| | 3. <i>as not</i> with infinitive. |
| | 4. <i>that</i> after doubt, deny in negative sentences. |
| | 5. <i>from</i> or <i>without</i> with the participial substantive, after prevent, escape, &c. |

me terrēbis, quomīnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortalis sit animus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac provīdus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si sapiens virtūtem colat! 7. Utīnam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quāsi me ames.

(b) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at him (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

LESSON LXXXI.

Interrogative Sentences.

479. ALL interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put *directly*; as, *nūm crēdīs*, do you believe?

480. *Nūm* and *nē* are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

- 1) The first clause is introduced by *nūm*, *utrūm*, or *nē*, and the second by *an*.

- 2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has *an* or *nē*.

483. VOCABULARY.

Enūmērārē, av, at, to enumerate, to count up.	Misēr, ērā, ērūm, unhappy, miser- able.
Ignis, is, m., fire, heat.	Mortalis, ē, mortal.
Immobilis, ē, immovable, fixed.	Nescirē, iv, it, to be ignorant, not to know.
Lōcūplēs, etūs, rich.	Olim, formerly.
Majōr, ūs, orīs (comp. of magnus), larger, greater.	Quaestiō, ōnis, question.
Minōr, ūs, orīs (comp. of parvus), smaller.	Rōtundūs, ā, ūm, round.
Mobilis, ē, movable.	Undē, whence.

484. Exercises.

(a) 1. Estne anīmus immortalis? 2. Visne miser esse? 3. Quis enūmēret artium multitudīnem? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. 7. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mobilis, an immobilis? 9. Sumusne immortāles, an mortāles?

(b) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (*habēre*) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

LESSON LXXXII.

*Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses
and with Qūum.*

485. EVERY conditional sentence consists of two parts, *the condition and the consequence*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

● If he has any thing, he will give it.

REM.—Here *et quīd hābeāt* is the *condition*, and *dābīt* the *consequence*.

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

- 1) Those which assume the *condition* to be *true*;
e. g.,

Sī quīd hābēt, dāt.

If he has any thing, he gives it.

- 2) Those which represent the condition as *possible*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

- 3) Those which represent the condition as *impossible*; e. g.,

1. Sī quīd hābērēt, dārēt.

If he had any thing, he would give it.

2. Sī quīd hābuisseēt, dēdissēt.

If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

- 1) That *the condition* is expressed in the first of the above classes by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

- 2) That *the consequence* is expressed in the first two of these classes by the *indicative* (or sometimes by the *imperative*), and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive:

- 1) When it expresses a *purpose* or *result*; e. g.,
1. Lēgātōs mīserunt, quī dīcērent.
They sent ambassadors to say (*that they might say*).
 2. Nēquē ōnīm tū īs ēs quī nesciās.
Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (*who may not know*).
- 2) When it *defines* or *explains* some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative; e. g.,
1. Sunt quī pūtent.
There are (some) who think, or some persons think.
 2. Nēmō est, quī haud intēllīgāt.
There is no one who does not understand.

489. Quūm (cūm) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g.,

Quae cūm itā sint.

Since these things (*lit.* which things) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (*when*), takes the indicative; e. g.,

Itēr faciēbām quūm Balbūm vīdēbām.

I was travelling *when* I saw Balbus.

The use of *quūm* with the *perfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive* to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367).

491. VOCABULARY.

Consülĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, *to consult,*
ask advice.

Natiō, ōnis, *nation.*

Pertimescĕrĕ, tĭmu, *to fear*
greatly.

Suaderĕ, suās, suās, *to advise.*

Sustinĕrĕ, tĭnu, tent, *to sustain,*
withstand.

Vulnerārĕ, av, at, *to wound.*

492. Exercises.

(a) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat.
3. Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccavissent, si id
fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anĭmo. 6. Si me
consŭlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendi-
disset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent.
10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinĕret hostium impĕtum,
misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus.

(b) 1. If he is alive (*lives*), he is now at Athens. 2.
If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he
had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4.
They would have sold their country, if they could. 5.
If the king had been in the city, he would have par-
doned you. 6. There were some who were wounded.
7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to
Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack
(make an attack upon) the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

Participles.

493. PARTICIPLES assume an assertion, which may be
formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary
or convenient to do so; thus, *puĕr rĭdens*, may be vari-

ously translated, according to the connection; as, *the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.*

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

1. Puēr rīdens { *the boy who laughs.*
 the boy who was laughing.
2. Puēr rīsūrūs, { *the boy who is going to laugh.*
 the boy who will laugh.
3. Puēr āmātūs, *the boy who is (or was) loved.*
4. Puēr āmandūs, *the boy who ought to be loved.*

495. If no substantive is expressed, supply *man, men, he, she, or those, &c.*; e. g.,

1. Rīdentīs, *of him who laughs.*
2. Rīdentiūm, *of those who laugh.*

496. With a neuter plural participle, supply things e. g.,

- Praeteritūrā, { *things that will pass away.*
 what will pass away.

REM.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *when* or *while*; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when (or while) he is (or was) laughing.*

REM.—In a sentence with *when* or *while*, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when laughing.*

498. If the participle stands alone, *he, they, a man, men, or one, &c.*, must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *when he (or one) is laughing.*
2. Rīdentēs, *when men (or they) are laughing.*

499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *if*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *if a man (he or one) laughs.*
2. Amātus, *if a man (he or one) is loved.*

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *because, for, since, or by participial substantives with from or through.*

- | | | |
|----------------|---|---|
| 501. Dūbītans, | { | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>because I doubt.</i> 2. <i>for I doubt.</i> 3. <i>since I doubt.</i> 4. <i>from doubting.</i> 5. <i>through doubting.</i> |
|----------------|---|---|

502. VOCABULARY.

Adulātōr, ōris, <i>flatterer.</i>	Perpētuo, <i>for ever.</i>
Disjungērē, junx, junct, <i>to separate.</i>	Pervēnrē, vēr, vent, <i>to arrive at, reach.</i>
Dūrārē, av, at, <i>to last.</i>	Piūs, ā, ūm, <i>pious.</i>
Expellērē, pūl, puls, <i>to expel, banish.</i>	Plācēre, plācu, plācīt, <i>to please.</i>
Fēlicītas, atis, <i>happiness.</i>	Rēvertērē, vert, vers, <i>to return, turn back.</i>
Immensūs, ā, ūm, <i>immense.</i>	Sātiārē, av, at, <i>to satisfy.</i>
Innoxīūs, ā, ūm, <i>harmless.</i>	Vidēri, vis, <i>to seem.</i>
Intervallūm, i, <i>distance, space.</i>	Vitūpērārē, av, at, <i>to reprove, criticise.</i>
Perfidiā, ae, <i>perfidy.</i>	

503. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. 2. Pii homīnes ad felicitātem perpetuo duratūram pervenient. 3. Adulātōr aut laudat vituperanda, aut vituperat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagīne puēros docēbit. 7. Respondent

se perfidiam veritos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

LESSON LXXXIV.

Participles—continued.

504. PARTICIPLES may sometimes be translated by verbs with *though* or *although*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though he laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *though he is (was, &c.) loved.*

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*, e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though laughing.*
2. Amātūs, *though loved.*

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participial nouns, with *after*; e. g.,

- | | | |
|-------------------|---|--|
| 1. Passūs (Act.), | { | 1. <i>after he has (had) suffered.</i> |
| | | 2. <i>after suffering.</i> |
| 2. Amātūs, | { | 1. <i>after he was (has been) loved.</i> |
| | | 2. <i>after he had been loved.</i> |
| | | 3. <i>after having been loved</i> |

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction *and*; e. g.

1. Rīdens exclāmāt.

He laughs and exclaims (lit. laughing he exclaims).

2. Rīdens exclāmāvīt.

He laughed and exclaimed.

REM.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptūm lēpōrēm lācērāt.

He has seized the hare and is mangling it.

508. Participles with *nōn* may be translated by participial substantives depending upon the preposition *without*; e. g.,

1. Nōn rīdens, *without laughing.*

2. Nōn amātūs, { 1. *without being loved.*
 { 2. *without loving him.*

3. Vītūpērāt lībrōs nōn intellectōs.

He censures books (not understood) without understanding them.

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquīniō rēgnantē, *when Tarquin was king.*

Tē sēdentē, *as you were sitting.*

Captā Tŷrō, *after Tyre was taken.*

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

Lēgēs violātae, the violation of the laws (lit. the violated laws).

Vērē apprōpinquantē, on the approach of spring.

511. VOCABULARY.

Adventūs, ūa, *approach.*

Antē (prep. with accus.), *before.*

Apprōpinquārē, av, at, *to approach.*

Coenā, ae, *supper, feast.*

Cōgnoseārē, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain.*

Comprehendērē, hend, hena, *to arrest, comprehend.*

Intelligērē, lex, lect, *to understand.*

Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsit, *to place.*

Prōficisci, prōfect, *to set out, to start.*

Transirē, i, it, *to pass over.*

Vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

512. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transimus ante oculos posita. 3. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionibus profectus celeriter adēro. 5. Comprehensum hominem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnum accēpit. 7. Multi vitupērant libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, iterum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognito Caesaris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(b) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8. Birds will return on the approach of spring.

LESSON LXXXV.

Derivation of Nouns.

513. WORDS may be formed in two ways; viz.,

- 1) By *derivation*, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., *moerōr*, sadness, formed by the addition of *ōr* to *moer*, the root of *moerērē*, to be sad.
- 2) By *composition*, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., *běněvōlens*, benevolent, well-wishing, from *běně*, well, and *vōlens*, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, *lūs*, *lā*, *lūm*, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes *ī* or *ō*, but generally *u*, which sometimes takes *c* before it), form *diminutives*; e. g., *hortūlūs* (*hortus*), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, *īdēs* (or *īdēs*), *ādēs*, and *iādēs*, and the feminine *ās* and *īs*, added to the root of names of persons, form *patronymics* or *names of descent*; e. g., *Priāmīdēs* (*Priamus*), a son or descendant of Priam; *Tantālīs* (*Tantalus*), daughter of Tantalus.

517. *Atūs*, *ītās*, and *ūrā*, added to the root of nouns, denote *office*, *rank*, or *body of men*; e. g., *consūlātūs* (*consul*), consulship; *cīvītās* (*civis*), state, body of citizens.

518. *Iūm*, added to the root of nouns, denotes the *state* or *condition* of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an *assemblage* of those objects; e. g., *servitūm* (*servus*), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, *ītās*, *iā*, *ītiā*, *ītūdō*, and *tūs* (gen.

tūtīs), added to the root of adjectives, form *abstract nouns*; e. g., *bōnūs* (bonus), goodness; *diligentiā* (diligens), diligence; *multitūdō* (multus), multitude; *virtūs* (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, *ā* and *ō*, added to the first root of verbs, and *ōr* (fem. *rix*) to the third, denote the *agent* or *person who*; e. g., *scribā* (scribere), a scribe; *bībo* (bibere), a drunkard; *victōr* (vincere), a conqueror.

521. *Or* and *iūm*, added to the first root, and *iō*, *ūs*, and *ūrā* to the third, denote the *action* or *state* expressed by the verb; e. g., *pāvōr* (pavere), fear; *gaudium* (gaudere), joy; *actō* (agere, act), an action, &c.

522. *Idō* and *īgō*, added to the first root, denote the *abstract* of the primitive; e. g., *cūpīdō* (cupere), desire.

523. *Mēn* and *mentim*, added to the first root, denote the *thing done*, *that by which it is done*, or *that which does*; e. g., *tegmen* (tegere), a covering; *flūmen* (fluere), a stream, river.

524. *Um*, added to the third root, denotes the *action* of the verb, or the *means* or *result* of it; e. g., *tectum* (tegere), roof, covering; *scriptum* (scribere), a writing.

525. VOCABULARY.

Adjūvārē, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help.*
Adventūs, ūs (advenire), *approach, arrival.*
Circumdārē, dēd, dāt, *to surround.*
Civitas, atis (civis), *state.*
Diligentiā, ae (diligens), *diligence.*
Fūgarē, av, at, *to put to flight.*
Hortulūs, i (hortus), *a little garden.*

Impērātōr, ōris (imperare), *commander.*
Multitadō, inis (multus), *multitude.*
Nuntiārē, av, at, *to announce, report.*
Pastōr, ōris (pascere), *shepherd.*
Sēnātūs, ūs (senex), *senate.*

526. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hortūli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maxīmas copias comparāvit. 3. Dili-gentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius ad-ventum tuum nuntiavērat. 5. Cicerōnem magna po-pūli multitūdo circumdēdit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momordērat.

(b) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Derivation of Adjectives.

527. ADJECTIVES may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, *ālīs*, *ārīs*, *icūs*, *ilīs*, and *iūs*, added to the root of nouns — *of*, *belonging to*, *related to*; e. g., *rēgālīs* (rex), regal; *pōpūlārīs* (populus), popular; *cīvī-līs* (civis), civil, &c.

529. *Aceūs*, *icūs*, *eūs*, and *inūs*, denote the *material*, the first two sometimes *origin*, and the last two some-times *similarity*; e. g., *pātriciūs* (pater), patrician; *au-reūs* (aurum), golden, &c.

530. *Osus* and *lentus* (often with connecting vowel *u*), denote *fulness, abundance*; e. g., *āquōsūs* (aqua), watery; *lūtulentūs* (lutum), full of mud.

531. *Acūs*, *ānūs* (*iānūs*), *iensīs*, and *īnūs*, added to the root of proper names of places, denote *native of, occupant of*; e. g., *Rōmānūs* (Roma), a Roman; *Athēniensīs* (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. *Ariūs* (generally used substantively), denotes *occupation, sometimes pertaining to*; e. g., *consiliāriūs* (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. *Atūs*, *ītūs*, and *ūtūs* — *furnished with, &c.*; e. g., *aurātūs* (aurum), gilt; *turrītūs* (turris), turreted, &c.

534. *Stūs* — *being in, having in one's self*; e. g., *rōbustūs* (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

- 1) *Ax* — *having a propensity to perform the action of the verb*; e. g., *ēdax* (edēre), voracious.
- 2) *Bundūs* and *cundūs* — the *strengthened* meaning of the present participle used adjectively; e. g., *mīrābundūs* (mirāri), full of admiration, &c.
- 3) *Idūs* (and sometimes *uūs*) — the *quality* indicated by the verb; e. g., *algīdus* (algēre), cold.
- 4) *Ilīs* and *bīlīs* — *capable of being, easy to be*; e. g., *dōcīlīs* (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; *crēdībīlīs* (credēre), capable of being believed, credible.

536. VOCABULARY.

Anulūs, I, a ring.

Athēniensīs, ē (Athenae), Athenian.

Carthaginiensīs, ē (Carthago), Carthaginian.

Civilīs, ē (civis), civil.

Fallax, acis (fallēre), false, deceptive.

Fabulōsūs, ā, ūm (fabūla), fabulous.

Gallīcūs, ā, ūm (Gallia), *Gallia*,
pertaining to Gaul.

Incredībilis, ē (in and credere),
incredible.

Narrārē, av, at, to *relate.*

Narratīō, ōnis (narrāre), *narra-*
tive, story.

Octō, *eight.*

Pōpŭlāria, ē (popŭlus), *popular.*

Sōcrātēs, is, *Socrates*, a celebra-
ted Athenian philosopher

Spēcīōsŭs, ā, ūm (species), *spe-*
cious, plausible.

Vincitrē, vinx, vinct, to *bind.*

537. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec narratio est fabulōsa. 2. Non sum tam imprūdēns, ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 3. Spe fallāci decepti estis; cavēte ne itērum decipiamīni. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibīle est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallīcum, tribus civīle narrāvit. 6. Athenien-ses Socrātis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(b) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These nar-ratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. 6. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. 8. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. 9. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are wag-ing a civil war.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.

538. VERBS may be derived from nouns and ad-jec-tives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called *denominatives*

540. Transitive denominatives end in *ārē* (dep. *ārī*) or *īrē*; e. g., *cūrārē* (cura), to take care of; *fīnīrē* (finis), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in *ērē* or *scērē*; e. g., *flōrērē* (flos), to bloom; *mātūrescērē* (maturus), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending *scērē* is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; *e* is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: *frequentatives*, *inchoatives*, *desideratives*, and *diminutives*.

543. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action, and are formed by the addition of *ārē* or *ītārē* to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add *ītārē* to the first root; e. g., *hābītārē* (habēre), to inhabit; *vōlītārē* (volāre), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the *beginning* or *increase* of an action, and are formed by the addition of *scērē* to the first root with a connecting vowel; e. g., *clārescērē* (clārē), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a *desire* to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *ūrērē* to the third root; e. g., *ēsūrērē* (edēre), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action, and are formed by adding *illārē* to the first root; e. g., *cantillārē* (cantāre), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

- 1) When derived from nouns, *īm*, *ītūs*; e. g., *grēgātīm* (grex), in flocks; *fundītūs* (fundus), from the foundation.
- 2) When derived from adjectives, *ē*, *z*, *o*, *īr* (con-

necting vowel *i* except after *n*); e. g., *vērē* (verus), truly; *fācīlē* (facilis), easily; *cītō* (citus), quickly; *fortītēr* (fortis), bravely.

- 3) When derived from verbs, *īm* added to the third root; e. g., *stātīm* (stare, stat), immediately.

548. VOCABULARY.

Cantārē, av, at (canēre), *to sing.*

Cūrārē, av, at (cura), *to take care of.*

[*guard.*

Custōdirē, iv, it (custos), *to*

Finirē, iv, it (finis), *to finish.*

Flōrescērē (flōrērē), *to begin to bloom.*

Fortītēr (fortis), *bravely.*

Germaniā, ae, *Germany.*

Hābitārē, av, at (habēre), *to inhabit, dwell.*

Lūdus, i, *play, sport, pl. games.*

Nuntiarē, av, at (nuntius), *to announce, report.*

Occultārē, av, at (occulere), *to hide, conceal.*

Prōvinciā, ae (pro and vincere), *province.*

Pugnārē, av, at (pugna), *to fight.*

Saevirē, iv or i, it (saevus), *to rage, to be cruel.*

Spectārē, av, at (spēcēre), *to see, look at.*

Stātīm (stare), *immediately.*

Tectūm, i (tegēre), *a covering, roof, house.*

Vigilarē, av, at (vigil), *to watch, remain awake.*

549. Exercises.

(a) 1. Labōrem nostrum finivimus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigilāsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpōra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puēri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbōres florescunt. 9. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevimus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidērit, statim curret ad te.

(b) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Composition of Words.

550. PREPOSITIONS often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

REM.—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

- 1) *A, āb, abs* — *away from*; e. g., *abstīnērē* (*abs* and *tēnērē*), *to abstain from*. In substantives and adjectives, it denotes *privation*; e. g., *āmēns* (*a* and *mēns*), *without mind, mad*.
- 2) *Ad* — *to* (*d* often assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, m,* and *v*); e. g., *accēpērē* (*ad* and *cāpērē*), *to accept*.
- 3) *Cōn* (*cūm*) — *with, together*, sometimes *completely* (*co* before *k* and *vowels*; *com* before *b, p,* and sometimes before a vowel; *n* assimilated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., *condūcērē* (*con* and *dūcērē*), *to lead together, collect*.
- 4) *Dē* — *from, down*; e. g., *dēdūcērē* (*dē* and *dūcērē*), *to deduce*. In substantives and adjectives, *privation*; e. g., *dēmēns* (*dē* and *mēns*), *mad*.
- 5) *E, ex* — *out of, thoroughly* (*e* before liquids and *b, d, g,* and *v, ef* before *f*); e. g., *expugnāre* (*ex* and *pugnāre*), *to vanquish storm*.
- 6) *In* — *into, on, against* (*im* before *b* and *p*; *i* before *gn*; *n* assimilated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., *incurrērē* (*in* and *currērē*),

to attack. In adjectives, *not*; e. g., *indignus* (in and dignus), unworthy.

- 7) Ob — *against* (*b* assimilated before *c, f,* and usually *p*); e. g., *oppōnĕrĕ* (ob and ponĕrĕ), to place against, to oppose.
- 8) Prō — *for, forth* (*pro* before vowels); e. g., *prōponĕrĕ* (pre and ponĕrĕ), to set forth, propose.
- 9) Sūb — *under, from below, somewhat* (*b* assimilated before *c, f,* *g,* and sometimes *m, p,* and *r*; *sus* in a few words); e. g., *subjĕrĕ* (sub and jacĕrĕ), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, *amb*, around, about; *dīs* or *dī*, asunder; *rĕ* (*rĕd* before vowels), back, again, away; *sĕ*, without, apart from; and *vĕ*, not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., *ambīrĕ* (amb and īrĕ), to go round; *dispōnĕrĕ* (dis and ponĕrĕ), to put asunder, to distribute; *rĕdīrĕ* (red and īrĕ), to return; *sĕdūcĕrĕ* (se and ducĕrĕ), to lead apart; *vĕsānūs* (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., *bĕnĕvōlens* (bene and volens), benevolent; *mālĕvōlens* (male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, *a, e* and *ae* are often changed into *i* (*a* sometimes into *e*); e. g., *accĭpĕrĕ* (ad and capĕrĕ), *abstĭnĕrĕ* (abs and tenĕrĕ), *occĭdĕrĕ* (ob and caedĕrĕ).

REM. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

REM. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short *i*, as in *āgrĭcŭlā* (ager and colĕrĕ), a husbandman.

554. From *fācĕrĕ*, to do, are derived, (1) *fex*, agent; e. g., *artĭfex* (ars and facĕrĕ), an artist; (2) *fĭcĭŭm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *artĭfĭcĭŭm*, an art; (3) *fĭcŭs*, he who does (*adjectively*); e. g., *bĕnĕfĭcŭs*, beneficent.

555. From *căpěřě*, to take, are derived, (1) *ceps*, agent; e. g., *princeps* (primus and capěre), one who takes the first (place), a prince, a leader; (2) *căpiũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *princăpiũm*, a beginning.

556. From *dăcěřě*, to speak, are derived, (1) *dex*, agent, one who speaks; e. g., *index*, an informer; (2) *dăciũm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *indăciũm*, a disclosure; (3) *dăcũs* (adj.), speaking; e. g., *mălēdăcũs*, slanderous.

557. From *căněřě*, to sing; *cěn*, agent; e. g., *tăbăcěn* (tuba and caněre), a trumpeter.

558. From *vellě*, to wish; *vělens* and *věhũs* (adj.), wishing; e. g., *běnevělens* and *běnevěhũs* (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From *ferrě* and *gěřěřě*, to bear; *fěř* and *gěř*, one who bears; e. g., *Lăcăfěř* (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; *armăgěř* (arma and gěřěre), armor-bearer.

560. From *cělēřě*, to cultivate; *cělă*, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., *ăgrăcělă* (ager and colěre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

561. VOCABULARY.

Addăcěřě, dux, duct (ad and ducěre), to bring to.

Attingěřě, tīg, tact (ad and tan-gěre), to reach, attain.

Conděřě, did, dit (con and dare), to found.

Convěnřě, vĕn, vent (con and venřě), to assemble, convene.

Expăgnărě, av, at (ex and pug-nare), to take by storm.

Incertũs, ă, ūm (in and certus), uncertain.

Incělă, ae, m. & f. (in and colěre), an inhabitant.

Invaděřě, vās, vās (in and vaděre), to go against, invade.

Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Obsěs, idīs, m. & f., hostage.

Occiděřě, cid, cas (ob and caděre), to fall, set.

Occidērē, cid, cis (ob and cae-
dēre), to kill.

Philōsōphūs, I, *philosopher*.

Possidērē, ēd, ess, to possess.

Princeps, īpis (primus and
capēre), the first, a leader,
chief.

Vērūm, I, *truth*.

562. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi philosophi verum non attigērunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostībus invadentībus. 3. Has terras possidēmus; illas expugnabīmus. 4. Galli Romam expugnāvērunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occīdit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occīdit. 7. Incōlæ ad eum legātos misērunt. 8. Caesar omnem senātum ad se convenīre, principumque libēros obsīdes ad se addūci jussit. 9. Incertum est quo tempore Dido Carthagīnem condidērit.

(b) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.



PARADIGMS.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.

563 ENDINGS of the Genitive Singular.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	I,	is,	us	ēl.*

REM.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

564. Gender in Latin is,

- 1) Natural, when determined by sex, as in English ; *as, hōmō*
a man, *masc.* ; *mūliēr*, a woman, *fem.*
- 2) Grammatical, when not determined by sex ; *as, sermō*, a
discourse, *masc.* ; *laurūs*, a laurel, *fem.*

565. Natural Gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of coun- tries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns.

REM.—Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

568. First Declension.

1. Characteristic *ae*.
2. Nominative endings : Latin *a* ; Greek *e*, *as*, and *es*.
3. Grammatical gender : *a* and *e*, *fem.* ; *as* and *es*, *masc.*

REM.—Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

* In this ending *e* is long, except in *spēl*, *fidēl*, and *rēl*.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ā,	ae,	ae,	ām,	ā,	ā
<i>Plur.</i>	ae,	ārūm,	ia,	ās,	ae,	ia

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions

5. Paradigms.

1. <i>Mūsā, a muse.</i>		2. <i>Epitōmē, an abridgment.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>Mūs-ā,</i>	<i>Mūs-ae.</i>	N. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ae.</i>
G. <i>Mūs-ae,</i>	<i>Mūs-ārūm.</i>	G. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ārūm.</i>
D. <i>Mūs-ae,</i>	<i>Mūs-ia.</i>	D. <i>Epitōm-ae,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ia.</i>
A. <i>Mūs-ām,</i>	<i>Mūs-ās.</i>	A. <i>Epitōm-ēn,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ās.</i>
V. <i>Mūs-ā,</i>	<i>Mūs-ae.</i>	V. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ae.</i>
A. <i>Mūs-ā,</i>	<i>Mūs-ia.</i>	A. <i>Epitōm-ē,</i>	<i>Epitōm-ia.</i>

3. <i>Aenēas (a man's name).</i>		4. <i>Anchisēs (a man's name).</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>Aenē-ās.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>Anchis-ēs.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>Aenē-ae.</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>Anchis-ae.</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>Aenē-ae.</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>Anchis-ae.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>Aenē-ām (ān).</i>	<i>A.</i>	<i>Anchis-ēn.</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>Aenē-ā.</i>	<i>V.</i>	<i>Anchis-ē (ā).</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>Aenē-ā.</i>	<i>A.</i>	<i>Anchis-ē (ā).</i>

569. *Second Declension.*

1. Characteristic *i*.
2. Nominative endings: Latin, *er, ir, us, um*; Greek, *os* and *on*.
3. Grammatical gender: *um* and *on*, neut.; the rest masculine, except,

1) *Alvūs, dōmūs, hūmūs, and vannūs*, which are *feminine*; *pēlīgūs* and *vīrūs*, *neuter*; and *vulgūs*, generally *neuter*, but sometimes *masculine*.

2) Such as come under previous rules.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	Nom. end.	i,	ī,	īm,	ī (or like nom.),	ī,
<i>Plur.</i>	i (<i>neut. ī</i>),	ōrūm,	ia,	ōs (<i>neut. ī</i>),	i (<i>neut. ī</i>),	ia.

REM.—A few Greek nouns are exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

Servūs, <i>slave.</i>	Rēgnūm, <i>king- dom.</i>	Gēnēr, <i>son-in- law.</i>	Agēr, <i>field.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

SINGULAR.

Serv-ūs.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ī.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.
Serv-ūm.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr-ūm.	Agr-ūm.
Serv-ē.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gēnēr.	Agēr.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gēnēr-ō.	Agr-ō.

PLURAL.

Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ōrūm.	Rēgn-ōrūm.	Gēnēr-ōrūm.	Agr-ōrūm.
Serv-īa.	Rēgn-īa.	Gēnēr-īa.	Agr-īa.
Serv-ōa.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ōa.	Agr-ōa.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gēnēr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-īa.	Rēgn-īa.	Gēnēr-īa.	Agr-īa.

REM.—Vir, a man, is declined like *gēnēr*.

6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

1. Iliōn, <i>n. (name of a city).</i>	2. Delōs, <i>f. (name of an island).</i>
N. Ili-ōn.	N. Del-ōa.
G. Ili-ī.	G. Del-ī.
D. Ili-ō.	D. Del-ō.
A. Ili-ōn.	A. Del-ōn.
V. Ili-ōn.	V. Del-ē.
A. Ili-ō.	A. Del-ō.

570. Third Declension.

1. Characteristic is.

2. Nominative endings: *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.*

3 Table of gender in the third declension.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
or, or, os, es increasing in gen. and o, except do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ya, aus, s impure, es not in- creasing in gen. and x.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and ua.

For exceptions, see 579.

4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

Class I.]	Class II.	Class III.	Class IV.
Root like Nom.	Root adds a let- ter.	Root drops nom- ending.	Root changes nom ending.

5. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abi.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	is,	i,	em, (im),	..	ē (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	es,	um (iūm),	ibūs,	es,	es,	ibūs.

REM. 1.—The inclosed endings *im* and *i* belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending *iām* of the genitive plural occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *er*; as, *mārē, mārīam*; *animal, animalīam*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.; as, *testis, testīam*; *nābīs, nābīam*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant; as, *urbis, urbiām*; *ars, arciām*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ns* is sometimes used); as, *ciens, cientīam*; *cohors, cohortīam*.

6. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abi.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	is,	i,	ē (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ā (iā),	um (iūm),	ibūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ibūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *er*.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in *c*,* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *patr*.
- 2) Nouns in *žen* generally change *ē* into *ī* in the root; as, *flūmēn*, a river; root, *flūmīn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ī* in the root; as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpī*.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *al* and *er*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

- 1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*; as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.
- 2) Nouns in *o* add *n*; as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *e* into *i*, before *n* in the root; as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgin*.

* There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

573. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *p*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*; *as*, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*; *as*, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.
- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; *as*, *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nubēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

574. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*; *as*, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *milēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root; *as*, *diēphas*, an elephant; root, *diēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *s* into *t*, before *t*, in the root; *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*; *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *i* or *e* in the root, as in these examples.

575. Paradigma.

Mūliēr, f., a woman. (root, <i>uomē</i> as <i>nom.</i> [136].)		Virgō, f., a virgin. (root, <i>virgin</i> [131, 2. REM. 2].)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	N. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
G. Mūliēr-īa,	Mūliēr-ūm.	G. Virgīn-īa,	Virgīn-ūm.
D. Mūliēr-ī,	Mūliēr-ībūs.	D. Virgīn-ī,	Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Mūliēr-ēm,	Mūliēr-ēs.	A. Virgīn-ēa,	Virgīn-ēs.
V. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	V. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
A. Mūliēr-ē,	Mūliēr-ībūs.	A. Virgīn-ē,	Virgīn-ībūs.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (572, 1).

Rex (gs), *m., a king.*
(root, *rēg* [134, 21])

Singular.	Plural.
N. Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
G. Rēg-īa,	Rēg-ūm.
D. Rēg-I,	Rēg-ībūs.
A. Rēg-ēni,	Rēg-ēs.
V. Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
A. Rēg-ē,	Rēg-ībūs.

Corpus, *n., a body.*
(root, *corpōr* [137, 21])

Singular.	Plural.
N. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ē.
G. Corpōr-īa,	Corpōr-ūm.
D. Corpōr-I,	Corpōr-ībūs.
A. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ē.
V. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ē.
A. Corpōr-ē,	Corpōr-ībūs.

GREEK NOUNS.

Pēriclēs (*a man's name*).

Singular.	Plural.
N. Pēricl-ēs.	
G. Pēricl-īa.	
D. Pēricl-I.	
A. Pēricl-ēm (ē).	
V. Pēricl-ēs (ē).	
A. Pēricl-ē.	

Hērōs, *a hero.*

Singular.	Plural.
N. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
G. Hērō-īa,	Hērō-ūm.
D. Hērō-I,	Hērō-ībūs.
A. Hērō-ēm (ē),	Hērō-ēs (ās).
V. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
A. Hērō-ē,	Hērō-ībūs.

576. Fourth Declension.

1. Characteristic *us*.
2. Nominative endings: *us* and *u*.
3. Grammatical Gender: *u*, neuter; *us*, masculine; except
Acūs, a needle; *dēmūs*, a house; *mānūs*, a hand; *idūs*, the ides
portacūs, a gallery; *tribūs*, a tribe; which are feminine.

4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	ABL.
<i>Sing.</i>	ūs,	ūs,	ui,	ūm,	ūs,	ū.
<i>Plur.</i>	ūs,	uūm,	ībūs (ūbūs*),	ūs,	ūs,	ībūs (ūbūs*).

5. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	ABL.
<i>Sing.</i>	ū,	ūs,	ū,	ū,	ū,	ū.
<i>Plur.</i>	uā,	uūm,	ībūs (ūbūs*),	uā,	uā,	ībūs (ūbūs*).

* This ending is used only in a few words.

6. Paradigms.

Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit</i> . (root, <i>fruct.</i>)		Cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>a horn</i> . (root, <i>corn.</i>)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-ū.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūm.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-ūm.
D. Fruct-ūi,	Fruct-ībūs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.
A. Fruct-ūm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ū.
V. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-ū.
A. Fruct-ū,	Fruct-ībūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.

577. Fifth Declension.

1. Characteristic *ei*.*
2. Nominative ending : *es*.
3. Grammatical gender *feminine*, except *dies*, a day (*m.* and *f.* in singular, and *m.* in plural), and *mēridies*, mid-day (*masc.*).
4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ei</i> ,*	<i>ei</i> ,*	<i>ēm</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ē</i> .
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ērūm</i> ,	<i>ēbūs</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ēbūs</i> .

5. Paradigms.

Rēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>a thing</i> . (root, <i>r.</i>)		Diēs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , <i>a day</i> . (root, <i>di.</i>)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G. R-ēi,	R-ērūm.	G. Di-ēi,	Di-ērūm.
D. R-ēi,	R-ēbūs.	D. Di-ēi,	Di-ēbūs.
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A. R-ē,	R-ēbūs.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbūs.

578. Case-endings of Substantives.

SINGULAR.						
	Dec. I. <i>F.</i>	Dec. II. <i>M.</i>	Dec. III. <i>N.</i>	Dec. IV. <i>N.</i>	Dec. V <i>F.</i>	
N.	ā.	ūs, ēr, īr, ūm.	<i>M. & F.</i> various.	<i>M.</i> ūs.	<i>N.</i> ū.	ēs.
G.	ae.	ī.	īa.	ūs.	ū.	ēi.*
D.	ae.	ō.	ī.	uī.	ū.	ēi.*
A.	ām.	ūm.	ēm (īm), like nom.	ūm.	ū.	ēm.
V.	ā.	ē, ēr, īr, ūm.	like nom.	ūs.	ū.	ēs.
A.	ā.	ō.	ē (ī).	ū.		ē.

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēs* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

PLURAL.									
	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.	
	F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.	
N.	ae.	I.	ā.	ēa.	ī or īā.	ūa.	uā.	ēa.	
G.	ārūm.	ōrūm.		īm (itūm).		ūūm.		ērūm.	
D.	īa.	īa.		ībūa.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūa.	
A.	āa.	ōa.	ā.	ēa.	ī or īā.	ūa.	uā.	ēa.	
V.	ae.	I.	ā.	ēa.	ī or īā.	ūa.	uā.	ēa.	
A.	īa.	īa.		ībūa.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūa.	

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

579. Table of Genders.

I. NATURAL GENDER.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

II. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, independent of nominative ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns.

III. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, as determined by nominative ending.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Dec. I.	as, es.	a, e.	
Dec. II.	er, us, os.*		um, on.
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, in-creasing in gen., o except do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure, x, es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, ua.
Dec. IV.	ua.		u.
Dec. V.		es.	

Principal Exceptions.†

SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvūs dōmūs, hūmūs, and vannūs, are *feminine*; pēlīgūs and vīrūs, *neuter*; vulgūs, generally *neuter*, sometimes *masculine*.

* Nouns in *ir* have natural gender.

† This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1) MASCULINES.

(do and go.) Cardŭ, cōmēdŭ, harpăgŭ, ordŭ, ūnēdŭ, ligŭ, and margŭ
(the last sometimes fem.).

(as.) As and Greek nouns in as (gen. *antis*).

(ia.) Amnīa, anguis, axis, cassia, cinis (or *f.*), collis, crinis, ensis, fascia, finis (or *f.*), follis, funis, ignis, lēpis, mensa, orbis, pānis, piscis, postis, pulvis, sanguis, torris, unguis, vectis, and vermis.

(s impure.) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or *f.*), mons, pons, quadrans, and rūdena.

(x.) Călix, cōdex, cortex, grex, pollex, thōrax, and vertex.

(l.) Săl and söl.

(n.) Liēn, pectēn, rān, and many words of Greek origin.

(ur.) Furfūr, turtūr, and vultūr.

(us.) Lēpus and mīa.

2) FEMININES.

(or and oa.) Arbŭr, cōs, and dŭs.

(es increasing.) Compēs, mercēs, mergēs, quies, rēquies, sēgēs, and tēgēs.

(o.) Cărŭ, echŭ, and Argŭ.

(ua.) Grŭs (*m.*), incŭs, iuventŭs, pālŭs, pēcŭs (*ŭdŭs*), sālŭs, sēnectŭs, servitŭs, sŭs (*m.*), tellŭs, and virtŭs.

3) NEUTERS.

(er.) Cădăvēr, ĭtēr, tŭbēr, ūbēr, vēr, verbēr, and names of plants in *er*.

(or.) Adŭr, aequŭr, cŭr, and marmŭr.

(as and ea.) Fās, nēfās, vās, and aea.

(os.) Os (*ŭris*), ōs (*ossis*), and the Greek words, *chaŭs*, *ēpŭs*, *ēthŭs*, and *mēlŭs*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Actŭs, idŭs, mănŭs, portŭcŭs, and tribŭs, are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Diēs and mēridiēs are masculine, though the former is sometimes *fem.* in *sing.*

580. *Adjectives.—First and second Declension.*

1. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	Singular.			Plural.			A few have Sing. thus:		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ēr, †	ā,	ūm.	ī,	ae,	ā,	ūs, ēr,	ā,	ūm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī	ōrūm,	ārūm,	ōrūm.	iūs,	iūs,	iūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īa,	īa,	īa.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ūm,	ām,	ūm.	ōa,	āa,	ā,	ūm,	ām,	ūm.
V.	ē, ēr, †	ā,	ūm.	ī,	ae,	ā,	ē, ēr,	ā,	ūm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īa,	īa,	īa.	ō,	ā,	ō.

2. Paradigma.

Bōnūs, good.

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Bōn-ūs,	ā,	ūm;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ā.
G.	Bon-ī,	ae,	ī;	Bōn-ōrūm,	ārūm,	ōrūm.
D.	Bon-ō,	ae,	ō;	Bōn-īa,	īa,	īa.
A.	Bon-ūm,	ām,	ūm;	Bōn-ōa,	āa,	ā.
V.	Bon-ē,	ā,	ūm;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ā.
A.	Bon-ō,	ā,	ō;	Bōn-īa,	īa,	īa.

Tēnēr, tender: root, tēnēr (e not dropped).

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Tēnēr,	ā,	ūm;	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ā.
G.	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ī;	Tēnēr-ōrūm,	ārūm,	ōrūm.
D.	Tēnēr-ō,	ae,	ō;	Tēnēr-īa,	īa,	īa.
A.	Tēnēr-ūm,	ām,	ūm;	Tēnēr-ōa,	āa,	ā.
V.	Tēnēr,	ā,	ūm;	Tēnēr-ī,	ae,	ā.
A.	Tēnēr-ō,	ā,	ō;	Tēnēr-īa,	īa,	īa.

REM. 1.—Most adjectives in *ēr* drop *ē* before *r* of the root in all genders.

REM. 2.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *iūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz.: *aliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *solūs*, alone; *totūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *alter*, the other; *neutēr*, neither; and *utēr*, which (of the two).

581. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

1. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz.:

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ēr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ē* is sometimes dropped): *ēr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

‡ See list, 113, REM.

1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).

2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).

3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

2. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the *abl. sing.* in *ě* or *ĩ*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ĩ* only.

2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *iā*, and the *genitive* in *iũm*.

3. Paradigms.

CLASS I.

Acěr, sharp.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Acěr,	acr-ĩa,	acr-ě.	N. Acr-ěa,	acr-ěa,	acr-iā.
G. Acr-ĩa,	acr-ĩa,	acr-ĩa.	G. Acr-iũm,	acr-iũm,	acr-iũm.
D. Acr-I,	acr-I,	acr-I.	D. Acr-ibũa,	acr-ibũa,	acr-ibũa.
A. Acr-ěm,	acr-ěm,	acr-ě.	A. Acr-ěa,	acr-ěa,	acr-iā.
V. Acěr,	acr-ĩa,	acr-ě.	V. Acr-ěa,	acr-ěa,	acr-iā.
A. Acr-I,	acr-I,	acr-I.	A. Acr-ibũa,	acr-ibũa,	acr-ibũa.

CLASS II.

1. Tristĩa, sad.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. Trist-ĩa,	trist-ě.	N. Trist-ěa,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-ĩa,	trist-ĩa.	G. Trist-iũm,	trist-iũm.
D. Trist-I,	trist-I.	D. Trist-ibũa,	trist-ibũa.
A. Trist-ěm,	trist-ě.	A. Trist-ěa,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-ĩa,	trist-ě.	V. Trist-ěa,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-I,	trist-I.	A. Trist-ibũa,	trist-ibũa.

2. Tristiör (comparative), more sad.

N. Tristiör,	tristiũa.	N. Tristiör-ěa,	tristiör-ā.
G. Tristiör-ĩa,	tristiör-ĩa.	G. Tristiör-ũm,	tristiör-ũm.
D. Tristiör-I,	tristiör-I.	D. Tristiör-ibũa,	tristiör-ibũa.
A. Tristiör-ěm,	tristiũa.	A. Tristiör-ěa,	tristiör-ā.
V. Tristiör,	tristiũa.	V. Tristiör-ěa,	tristiör-ā.
A. Tristiör-ě (ĩ),	tristiör-ě (ĩ).	A. Tristiör-ibũa,	tristiör-ibũa.

CLASS III.

Felix, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. Felix,	felix.	N. Felic-ēs,	felic-ia.
G. Felic-ia,	felic-ia.	G. Felic-iūm,	felic-iūm.
D. Felic-I,	felic-I.	D. Felic-ibūa.	felic-ibūa.
A. Felic-ēm,	felix.	A. Felic-ēs,	felic-ia.
V. Felix,	felix.	V. Felic-ēs,	felic-ia.
A. Felic-ē (I),	felic-ē (I).	A. Felic-ibūa,	felic-ibūa.

582. Comparison of Adjectives.

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
Examples.	Root.	Comparative.	Superlative.		
Altūs (high),	alt.	altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissimūs (ā, ūm).		
Mitīs (mild),	mit.	mitiōr (iōr, iūs),	mitissimūs (ā, ūm).		

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *or* add *rims* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherrimūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *is* form the superlative by adding *issim* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Facilis (easy),	faciliōr,	facilissimūs.
Difficilis (difficult),	difficiliōr,	difficilissimūs.
Similis (like),	similiōr,	similissimūs.
Dissimilis (unlike),	dissimiliōr,	dissimilissimūs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bonūs (good),	melior,	optimūs.
Mālūs (bad),	pejor,	pesimūs.
Magnūs (great),	major,	maximūs.
Parvūs (little),	minor,	minimūs.
Multūs (much),	plūs (pl. plūs, plūr),	plurimūs.

583. Numerals.*

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	Unūs, one.	Primūs, first.	Singulī, one by one.	Sēmēl, once.
2	Duō.	Sēcundūa.	Bini.	Bis.
3	Treā.	Tertiūa.	Teri.	Tēr.

* See Numerals, p. 145.

4	Quattuor.	Quartus.	Quaternus.	Quater.
5	Quinquē.	Quintus.	Quintus.	Quinquies.
6	Sex.	Sextus.	Senus.	Sexies.
7	Septem.	Septimus.	Septenus.	Septies.
8	Octo.	Octavus.	Octenus.	Octies.
9	Novem.	Nonus.	Novenus.	Novies.
10	Decem.	Décimus.	Dénus.	Décies.

584. Substantive Pronouns.

SINGULAR.

1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N. Egō, I.	Tū, thou.	
G. Mei, of me.	Tui, of thee.	{ Suī, of himself, her- self, itself.
D. Mihi, to or for me.	Tibi, to or for thee.	
A. Mē, me.	Tē, thee.	Sibi, to himself, &c.
V.	Tū, O thou.	Sē, himself.
A. Mē, with, &c., me.	Tē, with thee.	Sē, with himself.

FLURAL.

N. Nōs, we.	Vos, ye or you.	
G. Nostrum, } or Nostri, } of us.	Vestrum } or Vestri, } of you.	Suī, of themselves.
D. Nōbis, to us.	Vōbis, to you.	
A. Nōs, us.	Vos, you.	Sibi, to themselves.
V.	Vos, O ye or you.	Sē, themselves.
A. Nōbis, with us.	Vōbis, with you.	Sē, with themselves.

585. Adjective Pronouns.

I. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meus, meā, meum*; *tuus, tuā, tuum*; *suus, suā, suum*; *nostr, nostrā, nostrum*; *vestr, vestrā, vestrum*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns* (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are *hic, illē, istē, is*, and their compounds, and are declined as follows:

1. Hic, this.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Hic,	haec,	hōc.	Hi,	hae,	haec.
G. Hujus,	hujus,	hujus.	Hōrum,	hārūm,	hōrūm.
D. Huic,	huic,	huic.	His,	his,	his.
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.	Hos,	has,	haec.
V.					
A. Hōc,	hac,	hōc.	His,	his,	his.

2. Illē, he or that.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Illē,	illā,	illū.	Illī,	illae,	illā.
G. Illūs,	illūs,	illūs.	Illōrum,	illarū,	illōrum.
D. Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illī,	illae,	illī.
A. Illū,	illā,	illū.	Illōs,	illas,	illā.
V.					
A. Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illī,	illae,	illī.

3. Istē, that.

Istē, *that*, is declined like *illā*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

4. Is, he or that.

(Less specific than *illā*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Is,	eā,	id.	Ilī,	eae,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Eōrum,	eārū,	eōrum.
D. Ei,	ei,	ei.	Is or eis,	is or eis,	is or eis.
A. Eū,	eā,	id.	Eos,	eās,	eā.
V.					
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Is or eis,	is or eis,	is or eis.

5. Idēm, the same.

(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *is*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Idēm,	eādēm,	idēm.	Idēm,	eādēm,	eādēm.
G. Ejusdēm,	ejudēm,	ejudēm.	Eōrundēm,	eārundēm,	eōrundēm.
D. Eidēm,	eidēm,	eidēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.
A. Eundēm,	eandēm,	idēm.	Eōsdēm,	eāsdēm,	eādēm.
V.					
A. Eōdēm,	eādēm,	eōdēm.	Eisdēm, or Iisdēm,	eisdēm, or iisdēm.	eisdēm, or iisdēm.

III. The *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsē*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*. It is declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ipsē,	ipsā,	ipsū.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsā.
G. Ipsius,	ipsiūs,	ipsiūs.	Ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum.
D. Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīa,	ipsīa,	ipsīa.
A. Ipsū,	ipsām,	ipsū.	Ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsā.
V.					
▲ Ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	Ipsīa,	ipsīa,	ipsīa.

IV. The *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Quī,	quae,	quōd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D. Cui,	cui,	cui.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quōd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

V. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms *quīs*, nom. masc., and *quīd*, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdām*, a certain one; *āliquīs*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquīs*, if any, &c. They are compounds either of *quīs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

REM.—The compounds of *quīs* generally take *quīd* in the neut. sing. when used *substantively*, and *quōd* when used *adjectively*. Some of those compounds, as *āliquīs*, *siquīs*, take *quā* (not *quae*) in the fem. sing. and neut. plur.

586. Paradigm of the verb *Essē*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

Singular.	Plural.
Sūm, I am.	Sūmūs, we are.
Es, thou art.	Estīs, you are.
Est, he is.	Sunt, they are.

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Singular.	Plural.
Erām, <i>I was.</i>	Erāmūs, <i>we were.</i>
Erās, <i>thou wast.</i>	Erātis, <i>you were.</i>
Erāt, <i>he was.</i>	Erant, <i>they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

Erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	Erimūs, <i>we shall be.</i>
Eris, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	Eritis, <i>you will be.</i>
Erīt, <i>he will be.</i>	Erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

Fui, <i>I have been.</i>	Fuimūs, <i>we have been.</i>
Fuisti, <i>thou hast been.</i>	Fuistis, <i>you have been.</i>
Fuit, <i>he has been.</i>	Fuerunt, <i>they have been.</i>
	Fuere, <i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuerām, <i>I had been.</i>	Fuerāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>
Fuerās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>	Fuerātis, <i>you had been.</i>
Fuerāt, <i>he had been.</i>	Fuerant, <i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

Fuerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	Fuerimūs, <i>we shall have been.</i>
Fueris, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>	Fueritis, <i>you will have been.</i>
Fuerīt, <i>he will have been.</i>	Fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

Sim, <i>I may be.</i>	Simūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sis, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sitis, <i>you may be.</i>
Sit, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essem, <i>I might be.</i>	Essemūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Esseas, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Essetis, <i>you might be.</i>
Esset, <i>he might be.</i>	Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuerim, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuerimūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fueris, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fueritis, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuerīt, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuerint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēas, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētis, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Es, or estǎ, <i>be thou.</i>	Estǎ or estǔtǎ, <i>be ye.</i>
Estǎ, <i>let him be.</i>	Suntǎ, <i>let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essǎ, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissǎ, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fütürǎs (ǎ, ũm) essǎ, <i>to be about to be</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fütürǎs, ǎ, ũm, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

587. *Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.*

1. Infinitive endings.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ǎrǎ,	ǎrǎ,	ǎrǎ,	ǎrǎ.

2. Favorite vowels.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ǎ,	ǎ,	ǎ (ǎ),	ǎ

588. FIRST CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ǎrǎ*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
ǎv,	ǎt.

2. Paradigm.

Amǎrǎ, to love: 1st root, ǎm; 2d, ǎmǎv; 3d, ǎmat.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, <i>I love.</i>		Passive, <i>I am loved.</i>	
Singular.	Plural	Singular.	Plural
Am-ǎ,	Am-ǎmǎs,	Am-ǎr,	Am-ǎmǎr,
Am-ǎs,	Am-ǎtǎs,	Am-ǎrǎs (rǎ),	Am-ǎmǎnǎ,
Am-ǎt;	Am-ǎnt.	Am-ǎtǎr;	Am-ǎntǎr.

IMPERFECT, *was loving; was loved.*

Am-ǎǎm,	Am-ǎǎmǎs,	Am-ǎǎr,	Am-ǎǎmǎr,
Am-ǎǎs,	Am-ǎǎtǎs,	Am-ǎǎrǎs (rǎ);	Am-ǎǎmǎnǎ,
Am-ǎǎt;	Am-ǎǎnt.	Am-ǎǎtǎr;	Am-ǎǎntǎr

FUTURE, *will love ; will be loved.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ābō,	Am-ābimūs,	Am-ābōr,	Am-ābimūr,
Am-ābīs,	Am-ābitis,	Am-āberis (rē),	Am-ābimini,
Am-ābit ;	Am-ābunt.	Am-ābitūr ;	Am-ābuntūr.

PERFECT, *have loved ; have been loved.*

Amāv-i,	Amāv-imūs,	Amāt-ūs sūm,*	Amāt-i sūmūs,
Amāv-isti,	Amāv-istis,	Amāt-ūs ēs,	Amāt-i estis,
Amāv-it ;	Amāv-erunt (ērē).	Amāt-ūs est ;	Amāt-i sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had loved ; had been loved.*

Amāv-ērām,	Amāv-ērāmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērām,*	Amāt-i ērāmūs,
Amāv-ērās,	Amāv-ērātis,	Amāt-ūs ērās,	Amāt-i ērātis,
Amāv-ērāt ;	Amāv-erant.	Amāt-ūs ērāt ;	Amāt-i erant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *will have loved ; will have been loved.*

Amāv-ērō,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērō,*	Amāt-i ērīmūs,
Amāv-eris,	Amāv-eritis,	Amāt-ūs eris,	Amāt-i eritis,
Amāv-erit ;	Amāv-erint.	Amāt-ūs erit ;	Amāt-i erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may love ; may be loved.*

Am-ēm,	Am-ēmūs,	Am-ēr,	Am-ēmūr
Am-ēs,	Am-ētis,	Am-eris (rē),	Am-eminī,
Am-ēt ;	Am-ent.	Am-etur ;	Am-entūr

IMPERFECT, *might love ; might be loved.*

Am-ārēm,	Am-ārēmūs,	Am-ārēr,	Am-ārēmūr,
Am-ārēs,	Am-ārētis,	Am-āreris (rē),	Am-āreminī,
Am-ārēt ;	Am-arent.	Am-āretūr ;	Am-arentūr

PERFECT, *may have loved ; may have been loved.*

Amāv-ērīm,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs sūm,†	Amāt-i sūmūs,
Amāv-eris,	Amāv-eritis,	Amāt-ūs sis,	Amāt-i sitis,
Amāv-erit ;	Amāv-erint.	Amāt-ūs sit ;	Amāt-i sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have loved ; might have been loved.*

Amāv-issēm,	Amāv-issēmūs,	Amāt-ūs essēm,†	Amāt-i essēmūs,
Amāv-issēs,	Amāv-issētis,	Amāt-ūs essēs,	Amāt-i essētis,
Amāv-issēt ;	Amāv-issent.	Amāt-ūs essēt ;	Amāt-i essent.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ätö, or Am-ätö;	Am-ätö, or äm-ätötö,	Am-ärö, or äm-ätör,	Am-ämni
	Am-antö.	Am-ätör;	Am-antör

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-äre.	Am-äri.
PERF.	Amäv-issö.	Amät-üs cese.
FUT.	Amät-ürüs cese.	Amät-üm iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am-ana.	PERF.	Amät-üs.
FUT.	Amät-ürüs.	FUT.	Am-andüs.

GERUND.

Am-andi, andö, andüm, andö.

SUPINES.

Amät-üm. | Amät-ü.

589. SECOND CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ärö*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
u (äv),*	it

2. Paradigm.

Mönärö, to advise : 1st root, mön ; 2d, mönu ; 3d, mönä.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, I advise.		Passive, I am advised.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mön-ö,	Mön-ömüs,	Mön-öör,	Mön-ömür,
Mön-ös,	Mön-ötis,	Mön-öris (rö),	Mön-ömini,
Mön-öt ;	Mön-ent.	Mön-ötür ;	Mon-entür.

IMPERFECT, was advising ; was advised.

Mön-ehäm,	Mön-ehämüs,	Mön-ebär,	Mön-ehämür,
Mön-ehäs,	Mön-ebätis,	Mön-ebäris (rö),	Mön-ehämini,
Mön-ebät ;	Mön-ebant.	Mön-ebätür ;	Mön-ebantür

FUTURE, shall advise ; shall be advised.

Mön-ebö,	Mön-ebömüs,	Mön-ebör,	Mön-ebömür,
Mön-ebis,	Mön-ebitis,	Mön-eböris (rö),	Mön-ebömini,
Mön-ebit ;	Mön-ebunt.	Mön-ebitür ;	Mön-ebuntür.

* See 192, N.

PERFECT, *have advised; have been advised.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mönu-i,	Mönu-ümüs,	Mönit-üs süm,*	Mönit-i sümüs,
Mönu-istü,	Mönu-istüs,	Mönit-üs es,	Mönit-i estüs,
Mönu-it;	Mönu-erunt (erë).	Mönit-üs est;	Mönit-i sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had advised; had been advised.*

Mönu-ëräm,	Mönu-ërämüs,	Mönit-üs ëräm,*	Mönit-i ërämüs,
Mönu-ëräs,	Mönu-ërätüs,	Mönit-üs ëräs,	Mönit-i ërätüs,
Mönu-ërät;	Mönu-ërant.	Mönit-üs ërät;	Mönit-i ërant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have advised; shall have been advised.*

Mönu-ërð,	Mönu-ërümüs,	Mönit-üs ërð,*	Mönit-i ërümüs,
Mönu-ërüs,	Mönu-ërütüs,	Mönit-üs ërüs,	Mönit-i ërütüs,
Mönu-ërüt;	Mönu-ërunt.	Mönit-üs ërüt;	Mönit-i ërunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may advise; may be advised.*

Mön-eäm,	Mön-eämüs,	Mön-eär,	Mön-eämür,
Mön-eäs,	Mön-eätüs,	Mön-eärüs (rë),	Mön-eäminü,
Mön-eät;	Mön-eant.	Mön-eätür;	Mön-eantür.

IMPERFECT, *might advise; might be advised.*

Mön-ëräm,	Mön-ërämüs,	Mön-ërër,	Mön-ërämür,
Mön-ëräs,	Mön-ërätüs,	Mön-ërërüs (rë),	Mön-ërëminü,
Mön-ërät;	Mön-ërent.	Mön-ërëtür;	Mön-ërentür.

PERFECT, *may have advised; may have been advised.*

Mönu-ërüm	Mönu-ërümüs,	Mönit-üs süm,†	Mönit-i sümüs,
Mönu-ërüs,	Mönu-ërütüs,	Mönit-üs süs,	Mönit-i sütüs,
Mönu-ërüt;	Mönu-ërunt.	Mönit-üs süt;	Mönit-i sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have advised; might have been advised.*

Mönu-issëm,	Mönu-issëmüs,	Mönit-üs essëm,†	Mönit-i essëmüs,
Mönu-issës,	Mönu-issëtüs,	Mönit-üs essës,	Mönit-i essëtüs,
Mönu-issët;	Mönu-issent.	Mönit-üs essët;	Mönit-i essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mön-ä,	Mön-ëtë,	Mön-ërë,	Mön-ëminü,
or mön-ëtð,	or mön-ëtötð,	or mön-ëtör,	
Mön-ëtð;	Mön-entð.	Mön-ëtör;	Mön-entör.

* See 331 N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mön-šrě.		Mön-šrl.
PERF.	Mönu-issě.		Mönit-üs essě.
FUT.	Mönit-ürüs essě.		Mönit-üm iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mön-ena.		Mönit-ša.
FUT.	Mönit-ürša.		Mön-endša.

GERUND.

Mön-endi, endö, endüm, endä.

SUPINES.

Mönit-üm.		Mönit-a.
-----------	--	----------

590. THIRD CONJUGATION (Inf. ending šrě).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *s*, or *like 1st*; 3d, *t*, sometimes *a*.

2. Paradigm.

Rěgěřě, *to rule*: 1st root, *rěg*; 2d, *rex*; 3d, *rect*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Act., <i>I rule.</i>		Pass., <i>I am ruled.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rěg-š,	Rěgimša,	Rěg-šr,	Rěg-imšr,
Rěg-ša,	Rěg-itša,	Rěg-šris (rě),	Rěg-imini,
Rěg-št;	Rěg-unt.	Rěg-štür;	Rěg-untür.

IMPERFECT, *was ruling*; *was ruled.*

Rěg-šbām,	Rěg-šbāmša,	Rěg-šbār,	Rěg-šbāmšr,
Rěg-šbāš,	Rěg-šbātša,	Rěg-šbāris (rě),	Rěg-šbāmini,
Rěg-šbāt;	Rěg-šbant.	Rěg-šbātür;	Rěg-šbantür.

FUTURE, *shall rule*; *shall be ruled.*

Rěg-šm,	Rěg-šmša,	Rěg-šr,	Rěg-šmšr,
Rěg-ša,	Rěg-štša,	Rěg-šris (rě),	Rěg-šmini,
Rěg-št;	Rěg-ent.	Rěg-štür;	Rěg-entür.

PERFECT, *have ruled; have been ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rex-ī,	Rex-īmūs, -	Rect-ūs sūm,*	Rect-ī sūmūs,
Rex-istī,	Rex-istūs,	Rect-ūs ēs,	Rect-ī estūs,
Rex-īt;	Rex-ērunt (ērē).	Rect-ūs est;	Rect-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled; had been ruled.*

Rex-ērām,	Rex-ērāmūs,	Rect-ūs ērām,*	Rect-ī ērāmūs,
Rex-ērās,	Rex-ērātūs,	Rect-ūs ērās,	Rect-ī ērātūs,
Rex-ērāt;	Rex-ērant.	Rect-ūs ērāt;	Rect-ī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have ruled; shall have been ruled.*

Rex-ērō,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs ērō,*	Rect-ī ērīmūs,
Rex-erīs,	Rex-ērītūs,	Rect-ūs ērīs,	Rect-ī ērītūs,
Rex-erīt;	Rex-erint.	Rect-ūs erīt;	Rect-ī erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may rule; may be ruled.*

Rēg-ām,	Rēg-āmūs,	Rēg-ār,	Rēg-āmār,
Rēg-aā,	Rēg-ātūs,	Rēg-ārīs (rē),	Rēg-āmīnī,
Rēg-āt;	Rēg-ant.	Rēg-ātūr;	Rēg-antūr.

IMPERFECT, *might rule; might be ruled.*

Rēg-ērēm,	Rēg-ērēmūs,	Rēg-ērēr,	Rēg-ērēmūr,
Rēg-ērēs,	Rēg-ērētūs,	Rēg-ērērīs (rē),	Rēg-ērēmīnī.
Rēg-erēt;	Rēg-erent.	Rēg-erētūr,	Rēg-erentūr.

PERFECT, *may have ruled; may have been ruled.*

Rex-erīm,	Rex-erīmūs,	Rect-ūs aīm,†	Rect-ī aīmūs.
Rex-erīs,	Rex-erītūs,	Rect-ūs aīs,	Rect-ī aītūs,
Rex-erīt;	Rex-erint.	Rect-ūs aīt;	Rect-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have ruled; might have been ruled.*

Rex-issēm,	Rex-issēmūs,	Rect-ūs eesēm,†	Rect-ī eesēmūs,
Rex-issēs,	Rex-issētūs,	Rect-ūs eesēs,	Rect-ī essētūs,
Rex-issēt;	Rex-issent.	Rect-ūs eesēt;	Rect-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rēg-ē,	Rēg-ītē,	Rēg-erē,	Rēg-īmīnī,
or rēg-ītū,	or rēg-ītōtē,	or rēg-ītōr,	
Rēg-ītō;	Rēg-untō.	Rēg-ītōr;	Rēg-untōr.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Răg-ără.	Răg-ă
Pres.	Rex-issă.	Rect-ūs eșă.
Fut.	Rect-ūrūs eșă.	Rect-ūm irl.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Răg-ana.	Pres.	Rect-ūs.
Fut.	Rect-ūrūs.	Fut.	Răp-andūs

GERUND.

Răg-endī, endō, endūm, endō.

SUPINES.

Rect-ūm. | Rect-ū.

3. Paradigm of verbs in 1ō of the third conjugation.

Căp-ără, to take: 1st root, căp; 2d, cēp; 3d, capt.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active.		Passive.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Căp-iă,	Căp-iămūs,	Căp-iăr,	Căp-iămūr,
Căp-ia,	Căp-iătis,	Căp-eris (rē),	Căp-iămīnī,
Căp-iăt;	Căp-iunt.	Căp-iătūr;	Căp-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iebām,	Căp-iebāmūs,	Căp-iebăr,	Căp-iebāmūr,
Căp-iebāa,	Căp-iebātis,	Căp-iebāris (rē),	Căp-iebāmīnī,
Căp-iebāt;	Căp-iebant.	Căp-iebātūr;	Căp-iebantūr.

FUTURE.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iāmūs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iāmūr,
Căp-iaa,	Căp-iătis,	Căp-iāris (rē),	Căp-iāmīnī,
Căp-iăt;	Căp-ient.	Căp-iătūr;	Căp-ientūr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Căp-iām,	Căp-iāmūs,	Căp-iār,	Căp-iāmūr,
Căp-iaa,	Căp-iătis,	Căp-iāris (rē),	Căp-iāmīnī,
Căp-iăt.	Căp-iant.	Căp-iătūr;	Căp-iantūr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

3d Pl. Căp-iuntă. | 3d Pl. Căp-iuntă.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-iena. | Fut. Căp-ientia.

GERUND.

Căp-ienti, dō, &c.

☞ The other parts of verbs in iă are entirely regular.

591. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Inf. ending iŕe).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, iŕ; 3d, it.

2. Paradigm.

Audiŕe, to hear : 1st root, aud; 2d, audiŕ; 3d, audit.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Act., I hear.		Pass., I am heard.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Aud-iă,	Aud-imă,	Aud-iŕ,	Aud-imŕ,
Aud-is,	Aud-ită,	Aud-iŕis (rě),	Aud-imini,
Aud-it;	Aud-unt.	Aud-itŕ;	Aud-iuntŕ.

IMPERFECT, was hearing; was heard.

Aud-iăm,	Aud-iămă,	Aud-iăŕ,	Aud-iămŕ,
Aud-iăs,	Aud-iătă,	Aud-iăŕis (rě),	Aud-iămini,
Aud-iăt;	Aud-iănt.	Aud-iătŕ;	Aud-iăntŕ.

FUTURE, shall hear; shall be heard.

Aud-iām,	Aud-iāmă,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iāmŕ,
Aud-iās,	Aud-iătă,	Aud-iārīs (rě),	Aud-iāmini,
Aud-iăt;	Aud-iānt.	Aud-iătŕ;	Aud-iāntŕ.

PERFECT, have heard; have been heard.

Audiŕ-i,	Audiŕ-imă,	Audit-ŭs sŭm,*	Audit-i sŭmă,
Audiŕ-iŭ,	Audiŕ-iŭă,	Audit-ŭs ă,	Audit-i eŭă,
Audiŕ-it;	Audiŕ-erunt (erě).	Audit-ŭs est;	Audit-i sunt.

* See 381, N.

PLUPERFECT, *had heard; had been heard.*

Audiv-ērām,	Audiv-ērāmūs,	Audit-ūs ērām,*	Audit-I ērāmūs,
Audiv-ērās,	Audiv-ērātīs,	Audit-ūs ērās,	Audit-I ērātīs,
Audiv-ērāt;	Audiv-ērant.	Audit-ūs ērāt;	Audit-I ērant

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have heard; shall have been heard.*

Audiv-ērō,	Audiv-ērīmūs,	Audit-ūs ērō,*	Audit-I ērīmūs,
Audiv-ērīs,	Audiv-ērītīs,	Audit-ūs ērīs,	Audit-I ērītīs,
Audiv-ērīt;	Audiv-ērint.	Audit-ūs ērīt;	Audit-I ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may hear; may be heard.*

Aud-iām,	Aud-iāmūs,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iāmūr,
Aud-ias,	Aud-iatīs,	Aud-iārīs (rē),	Aud-iāmīnī,
Aud-iať;	Aud-iant.	Aud-iaťūr;	Aud-iantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might hear; might be heard.*

Aud-irēm,	Aud-irēmūs,	Aud-irēr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Aud-irēs,	Aud-irētīs,	Aud-irērīs (rē),	Aud-irēmīnī,
Aud-irēt;	Aud-irent.	Aud-irētūr;	Aud-irentūr.

PERFECT, *may have heard; may have been heard.*

Audiv-ērīm,	Audiv-ērīmūs,	Audit-ūs sīm,†	Audit-I sīmūs,
Audiv-ērīs,	Audiv-ērītīs,	Audit-ūs sīs,	Audit-I sītīs,
Audiv-ērīt;	Audiv-ērint.	Audit-ūs sīt;	Audit-I sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have heard; might have been heard.*

Audiv-issēm,	Audiv-issēmūs,	Audit-ūs essēm,†	Audit-I essēmūs,
Audiv-issēs,	Audiv-issētīs,	Audit-ūs essēs,	Audit-I essētīs,
Audiv-issēt;	Audiv-issent.	Audit-ūs essēt;	Audit-I essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-I,	Aud-itō,	Aud-irē,	Aud-īmīnī,
or aud-itō,	or aud-itōtē,	or aud-itōr,	
Aud-itō;	Aud-iuntō.	Aud-itōr;	Aud-iuntōr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Aud-irē.	Aud-iri.
Pres. Audiv-issē.	Audit-ūs essē.
Fut. Audit-ūrus essē.	Audit-ūm iri.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

PARTICIPLES.

PRÆS.	Audiens.		PRÆF.	Audit-ūs.
FUT.	Audit-ūrus.		FUT.	Audiendūs.

GERUND.

Audiendū, iendō, iendūm, iendō.

SUPINES.

Audit-ūm.		Audit-ū.
-----------	--	----------

592. Formation of Second Root.

Conj. I.		Conj. II.		Conj. III.		Conj. IV.
----------	--	-----------	--	------------	--	-----------

REGULAR.

äv.		u or ev.		s or like 1st root.		iv
-----	--	----------	--	---------------------	--	----

FIRST IRREGULARITY.

Radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).		radical vowel lengthened.
------------------------------	--	------------------------------	--	---	--	------------------------------

SECOND IRREGULARITY.

Reduplication.		reduplication.		reduplication.	
----------------	--	----------------	--	----------------	--

THIRD IRREGULARITY.

Analogy of 2d conj.		analogy of 3d conj.		analogy of 2d or 4th conj.		analogy of 2d or 8d conj.
------------------------	--	------------------------	--	-------------------------------	--	------------------------------

593. Deponent Verbs.

Deponent verbs are such as have a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*. They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Lōquens, *speaking*; 2) lōcutūs, *having spoken*; 3) lōcutūrus, *about to speak*; 4) lōquendūs, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

Irregular Verbs.

594. Paradigm of Possē,* to be able.

2d root, pōtu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt.

Imp. pōtērām; Fut. pōtērō; Perf. pōtu-ī; Pluperf. pōtu-ērām; Fut. Perf. pōtu-ērō.

* For the conjugation of the simple verb, *esse*, see 586.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possēm; Imp. possēm; Perf. pōtu-ērīm; Pluperf. pōtu-issēm.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. possē; Perf. pōtu-issē.

PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).

595. Paradigms of *Vellē* (to be willing) and its compounds.

Vellē.	Nollē.	Mallē.
2d root, <i>vōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>nōlu</i> .	2d root, <i>malu</i> .

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Vōlō,	Nōlō,	Malō,
Via,	Nonvia,	Mavia,
Vult;	Nonvult;	Māvult;
Vōlūmūr,	Nōlūmūs,	Mālūmūs,
Vultis,	Nonvultis,	Māvultis,
Vōlunt.	Nōlunt.	Malunt.

IMPERFECT.

Vōl-ebām, bās, &c.	Nōl-ebām, bās, &c.	Mal-ebām, bās, &c.
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

FUTURE.

Vōl-ām.	Nōl-ām.	Mal-ām.
---------	---------	---------

PERFECT.

Vōlu-l.	Nōlu-l.	Malu-l.
---------	---------	---------

PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-ērām.	Nōlu-ērām.	Malu-ērām.
------------	------------	------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Vōlu-ērō.	Nōlu-ērō.	Malu-ērō.
-----------	-----------	-----------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Vēl-īm, is, &c.	Nōl-īm, is, &c.	Māl-īm, is, &c.
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

IMPERFECT.

Vell-ēm, es, &c.	Noll-ēm.	Mall-ēm.
------------------	----------	----------

PERFECT.

Vōlu-ērīm.	Nōlu-ērīm.	Malu-ērīm.
------------	------------	------------

PLUPERFECT.

Vōlu-issēm.	Nōlu-issēm.	Malu-issēm.
-------------	-------------	-------------

IMPERATIVE.

Nól-i or itš.	
Nól-itš or itôtš.	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Vellš.	Nollš.	Mallš.
Pres. Völu-issš.	Nölu-issš.	Mälu-issš.

PARTICIPLES.

Völena.	Nölena.
---------	---------

196. Paradigm of *Ferrš*, to bear.

2d root, *tšl*; 3d, *lat*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Active.	Passive.
Fēr-š, fer-a, fer-t, fēr-imšs, fer-tšs, fēr-unt.	Fēr-šr, fer-ršs, fer-tür, fēr-imür, fēr-imini, fēr-untür.

IMPERFECT.

Fēr-ššm, šs, šc.	Fēr-ššr, ššis, šc.
------------------	--------------------

FUTURE.

Fēr-šm, šs, šc.	Fēr-šr, šris, šc.
-----------------	-------------------

PERFECT.

Tšl-i, istš, šc.	Lät-šs šüm, šs, šc.
------------------	---------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tšl-ššm, šs, šc.	Lät-šs ššm, šc.
------------------	-----------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tšl-ššš, šc.	Lät-šs ššš, šc.
--------------	-----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fēr-šm, šs, šc.	Fēr-šr, šris, šc.
-----------------	-------------------

IMPERFECT.

Fer-ršm, ršs, šc.	Fer-ršr, ršris, šc.
-------------------	---------------------

PERFECT.

Tšl-ššm, šc.	Lät-šs šüm, šc.
--------------	-----------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tšl-issšm.	Lät-šs essšm, šc.
------------	-------------------

IMPERATIVE.

Active.
 Fēr, or fertō,
 Fer-tō;
 Fer-tē, or fer-tōtē,
 Fēr-untō.

Passive.
 Fer-rē, or fer-tōr,
 Fer-tōr;
 Fēr-īmīnī,
 Fēr-untōr.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fer-rē,
Perf. Tūl-isse,
Fut. Lāt-ūrūs esse.

Fer-rī,
 Lāt-ūs esse,
 Lāt-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Fēr-ens,
Fut. Lāt-ūrūs (ā, ūm).

Perf. Lāt-ūs (ā, ūm).
Fut. Fēr-endūs (ā, ūm).

GERUND.

Fēr-endī, dō, dūm, dā.

SUPINE.

Lāt-ūm.

Lāt-ū.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrī* are conjugated like the simple verb.

597. Paradigm of *Fīērī*, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

Indicative.
 Fīō, fīs, fīt, &c.

Subjunctive.
 Fī-ām, fī-as, fī-āt, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fī-ebām, ebās, &c.

Fī-ērēm, ērēs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fī-ām, ēs, &c.

PERFECT.

Fact-ūs sūm, &c.

Fact-ūs sūm, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērām, &c.

Fact-ūs esseām, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ūs ērō, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. Fī, or fī-tō,
 Fī-tō.

Plur. Fī-tē, or fī-tōtē,
 Fī-untō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fieri; *Perf. Fact-ūs esse*; *Fut. Fact-ūm M.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); *Fut. Fāciendūs (ā, ūm)*.

598. Paradigm of *Irē*, to go.

2d root, *iv*; 3d, *ū*.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Ed, is, it</i> ; <i>Imūs, itūs, eunt.</i>		<i>Eām, eās, &c.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Ibām, ibās, &c.</i>		<i>Irēm, Irēs, &c.</i>
----------------------------	--	----------------------------

FUTURE.

Ibō, ibia, &c.

PERFECT.

<i>Iv-I, Iv-isti, &c.</i>		<i>Iv-ērīm, ēria, &c.</i>
-------------------------------	--	-------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Iv-ērām, ērās, &c.</i>		<i>Iv-issēm, issēs, &c.</i>
-------------------------------	--	---------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ērō, ēria, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing. I, or Itō, Itā.</i>		<i>Plur. Itē, or Itōtē, Euntē.</i>
----------------------------------	--	--

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irē; *Perf. Iv-issē*; *Fut. Itūrūs esse*.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (gen. euntis); *Fut. Itūrūs, ā, ūm*.

GERUND.

Eundi, dō, dūm, dō.

SUPINE.

Itūm, itā.

599. *Edērē*, to eat.

Edērē, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essē*. These are as follows:

Regular.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Edē, &c.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Edē, &c.</i>
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>Edērēm, &c.</i>
<i>Infia.</i>	<i>Edērē.</i>

Irregular.

<i>Ea, est, estia.</i>
<i>Ea, estō, estē, eatōtē.</i>
<i>Essēm, essēs, &c.</i>
<i>Essē.</i>

600. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *scriptūrus sūm*, I am about to write: the second expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *virtūs cōlendā est*, virtue must be cultivated.

601. *Impersonal Verbs.*

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportēt, it behooves.

Taedēt mē, it disgusts me (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, it is known.

Juvāt, it delights.

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Mihī scribendū est, I must or should write.

Tibī scribendū est, you must or should write.

Illī scribendū est, he must or should write.

Nobis scribendū est, we must or should write.

Vobis scribendū est, you must or should write.

Illis scribendū est, they must or should write.

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēditūr, I am believed.

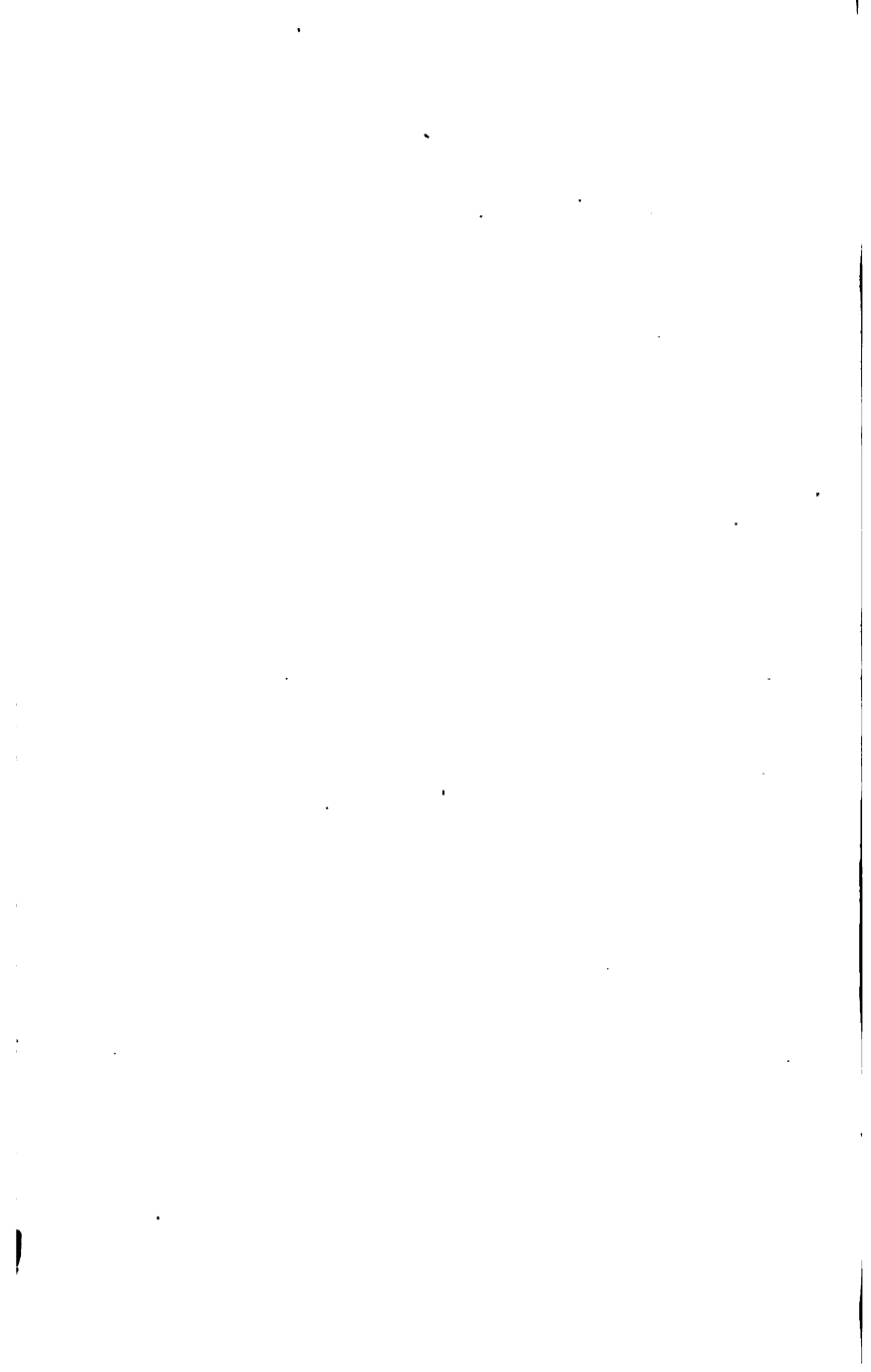
Tibī crēditūr, Thou art believed.

Illī crēditūr, He is believed.

Nobis crēditūr, We are believed.

Vobis crēditūr, You are believed.

Illis crēditūr, They are believed.



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

602. PARTS of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e. g., *Amās, thou lovest*; *puēr ludīt, the boy plays*.

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., *Equūs currit (one prop.), the horse runs*; *Puēr ludīt ēt ēquūs currit (two propositions)*.

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

- 1) Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition; e. g., *Puēr ludīt*.
- 2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., *Puēr ludīt ēt ēquūs currit*.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

- 1) Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
- 2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., *Servūs vēnīt ūt portās claudāt, the slave has come to shut the gates*. Here, '*servūs vēnīt*' is a principal proposition, and '*ūt portās claudāt*' is a dependent proposition.

CHAPTER I.

The Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

SECTION I.—SUBJECT.

607. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz.:

- 1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as, *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdū*.
- 2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *lūdū*, in the above sentence.

608. The subject of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A noun; e. g., *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdū*; or,
- 2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., *menīrī*, in the sentence *turpē est menīrī*.

609. RULE I. *The Subject*.—The subject of a finite* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., *Equūs currit*, *the horse runs*.

610. The subject may either be *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple subject* consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) *Lātinūs rēgnabāt*, *Latinus was reigning*; (2) *Lātinūs rex rēgnabāt*, *Latinus the king was reigning*.
- 2) The *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., *Caesār ēt Balbūs Rōmām vēnērunt*, *Caesar and Balbus came to Rome*.

SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A verb; e. g., *lūdū*, in the sentence *puēr lūdū*; or,
- 2) The verb *essē* (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

* For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

† By an *attributive* noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

1.

Cicēro fuit consūl, *Cicero was consul.*

Christiani est nēmīnēm violārē, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.* Here, *fuit consūl* and *Christiani est* are the predicates.

2.

Terrā est rōtundā, *the earth is round.*

Hūmānūm est errārē, *to err is human.* Here, *est rōtundā* and *hūmānūm est* are the predicates.

612. RULE II. *Finite Verb.*—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., *Puēr lūdīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—If the subject is *compound*, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. RULE III. *Attributive Noun.*—An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē* and a few passive verbs, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cicēro fuit consūl, Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiani est nēmīnēm violārē, it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

614. RULE IV. *Adjectives.*—Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender, number, and case*, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., *Terrā est rōtundā, the earth is round.*

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple* predicate contains but a single finite verb; e. g., *Puēr currīt, the boy runs.*
- 2) The *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., *Puēr currīt et lūdīt, the boy runs and plays.*

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

- 1) The *indicative* is used, in positive assertions; e. g., *Porta claudīt, he is shutting the gates.*
- 2) The *subjunctive* is used,

- a) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*; e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it* (i. e., *if he had it, perhaps*).
- b) *Sometimes* to express a *wish* or *command*; e. g., *Scribāt, he may write, may he write, or let him write.*
- 3) The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., *Portas claudē, shut the gates.*

617. RULE V. *Vocative*.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g., *Quid est, Cātīlmā? why is this, Catiline?*

REM.—This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

SECTION I.—USE OF MODIFIERS.

618. BOTH subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,

- 1) *Lātinūs rex rēgnāvīt, Latinus the king reigned.* Here the subject is modified by *rex* (59).
- 2) *Militēs fortītēr pagnant, the soldiers fight bravely.* Here the predicate is modified by *fortītēr* (77).

619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may be itself modified; e. g., *Lātinūs, bōnūs rex, rēgnāvīt.* Here the modifier, *rex*, is itself modified by *bōnūs*.

620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with modifiers.

SECTION II.—MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,

I. By adjectives and participles.

II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.

622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g.,

Bōnūs puēr, a good boy.

See Rule IV.

623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives. These are,

- 1) Limiting nouns.
- 2) Relative clauses.

624. RULE VI. *Limiting Nouns*.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Lātinūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Rēgis filiūs*, *the king's son*: except,
 - a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g., *Puēr exīmiāe pulchritudinīs*, or *Puēr exīmia pulchritudinē*, *a boy of remarkable beauty*.

625. RULE VII. *Relative Clauses*.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; e. g., *Puēr qui lōdit*, *the boy who plays*.

626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express *purpose* or *result*; e. g., *Lēgātōs misērunt qui dīcerent*, *they sent ambassadors to say* (lit., *who might say*).
- 2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., *Sunt qui pūtent*, *there are (some) who think*.

SECTION III.—MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

627. Adjectives may be modified,

I. By adverbs.

II. By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.

628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*.

629. RULE VIII. *Adverbs*.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*; *milēs fortītēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*.

REM.—It will be observed that *adverbs* modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.

630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,

- 1) The genitive.
- 2) The dative.
- 3) The ablative.
- 4) The infinitive.

631. RULE IX. *Genitive*.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness*, and the like, together with their *contraries*, take the genitive; e. g., *Cūpīdus laudis, desirous of praise*.

632. RULE X. *Dative*.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi gratissimā erat, peace was very acceptable to me*.

633. RULE XI. *Ablative*.—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting *cause, manner, or means*; e. g., *Aegēr avaritiā, diseased by avarice*.

634. RULE XII. *Ablative*.—The adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, praeditus, fretus*, and *liber*, take the ablative; e. g., *Virtus parvō contentā est, virtue is content with little*.

635. RULE XIII. *Supine in ū as Ablative*.—The supine in *ū* as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying *good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.*; e. g., *Difficilē dicta (difficult in saying), difficult to say*.

636. RULE XIV. *Ablative*.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative; e. g., *Clēmētia diviniūs, more godlike than clemency*.

Obs.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., *Europā minōr est quām Asiā, Europe is smaller than Asia*.

637. RULE XV. *Infinitive*.—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., *Dignus amari, worthy to be loved*.

Rem.—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

SECTION IV.—MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

- I. By objects.
- II. By adverbial modifiers.

§ 1. *Objects.*

639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns.
- 2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.

640. Verbs may take one or more oblique cases of nouns as objects; e. g., (1) *Čaiūs puellām laudāt*, *Caius praises the girl*. (2) *Balbūs puērō vīām monstrāt*, *Balbus shows the way to the boy*.

641. RULE XVI.—The *accusative* is used as the *direct object* of an action; e. g., *Čaiūs puellām laudāt*, *Caius praises the girl*.

642. RULE XVII.—The *genitive* is used,

- 1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., *Misērēmīni sōciōrūm*, *pity the allies*.
- 2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., *Mēmīni vivōrūm*, *I remember the living*.
- 3) After *rēfert* and *intērest*; e. g., *Intērest omniūm*, *it is the interest of all*.

REM.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the *accusative*; e. g., *Mēmīni Činnām*, *I remember Cinna*.

643. RULE XVIII.—The *dative* is used,

- 1) After *essē* in expressions denoting possession; e. g., *Puērō est libēr*, *the boy has a book* (lit., *there is a book to the boy*).
- 2) After the compounds of *essē*, except *possē*, to be able; e. g., *Mihī profuīt*, *it profited me*.
- 3) After the compounds of *bēnē*, *sāīs*, and *mālē*; e. g., *Officiō suō sātisfēcīt*, *he has discharged his duty* (lit., *has done enough for*).
- 4) After the compounds of the prepositions, *ād*, *antē*, *oōn*, *īn*, *intēr*, *ōb*, *post*, *prae*, *sūb*, and *sūpēr*, together with a few others; e. g., *Vēni ūt mihī succurrās*, *I have come that you may assist (succor) me*.
- 5) After verbs signifying to *command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *resist*, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c.; e. g., *Lēgībūs pārēt*, *he obeys the laws* (is obedient to the laws).

644. RULE XIX.—The *ablative* is used,

- 1) After the deponent verbs, *ūti*, *frui*, *fungi*, *pōnri*, *vesci*,

dignari,* and their compounds; e. g., *Lactē vescuntūr* they live upon milk.

- 2) After verbs signifying to abound or be destitute of; e. g., *Nēmō aliōrū ōpē cārēre pōtest*, no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.

645. RULE XX. *Two Accusatives*.—Verbs of asking, demanding teaching, and concealing, may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e. g., *Caesār frūmentū Aeduōs flagitābāt*, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

646. RULE XXI. *Accusative and Genitive*.—Verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning, and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g., *Caīum proditiōnis accūsant*, they accuse Caius of treachery.

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *crimīnē*, understood. See 214, Note.

647. RULE XXII. *Accusative and Genitive*.—The impersonal verbs of feeling, *miserēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *pigēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., *Taedēt mē vitae*, I am weary of life (lit., it wearies me of life).

648. RULE XXIII. *Accusative and Dative*.—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect object; e. g., *Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt*, Balbus shows the way to the boy.

649. RULE XXIV. *Accusative and two Datives*.—Transitive verbs of giving, sending, imputing (*dārē*, *mitterē*, *vertērē*, &c.), sometimes take a direct object in the accusative, together with two indirect objects in the dative; e. g., *Rēgnū suū Romanis donō dedit*, he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present (for a present).

650. RULE XXV. *Accusative and Ablative*.—Verbs signifying to separate from, or deprive of, take the accusative of the direct object, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c. e. g., *Mē lucē privant*, they deprive me of light.

* *Dignari* takes a direct object in connection with the ablative; e. g., *Tū hōnōrē dignātūr*, he thinks you worthy of honor.

651. RULE XXVI. *Two Datives*.—Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, to come, to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which*; e. g., *Caesari auxilio venit, he went to the assistance of Caesar*.

652. RULE XXVII. *Dative and Ablative*.—*Opus est* and *usus est*, as impersonal verbs signifying need, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., *Ducē nobis opus est, we need a leader* (lit., *there is need to us of a leader*).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. *Cūpit pugnare, he desires (what?) to fight.*
2. *Sperō te esse beatū, I hope (what?) that you are happy.*
3. *Nesciō undē sol ignē hābeāt, I know not (what?) whence the sun derives its fire.*

654. RULE XXVIII. *Infinitive as Object*.—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as *object* is used chiefly after verbs of *perceiving, declaring, desiring*, and the like.

655. RULE XXIX. *Subject of Infinitive*.—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., *Sperō te esse beatū, I hope you are happy.*

REM.—In this example *te*, which is the subject of *esse*, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. RULE XXX. *Dependent Question as Object*.—An indirect or dependent question may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., *Nesciō undē sol ignē hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. RULE XXXI. *Object after Passive Verbs*.—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g., (*Act.*) *Balbū furti accūsant, they accuse Balbus of theft*; (*Pass.*) *Balbū furti accūsātūr, Balbus is accused of theft.*

659. RULE XXXII. *Agent of Passive Verbs*.—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with *a* or *ab*; e. g., *Puer a Caiō docētūr, the boy is taught by Caius*; except,

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., *Mihī scribendū est, I must write.*

660. RULE XXXIII. *Impersonal Passive Verbs.*—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *Mihī crēditūr, I am believed* (lit., *it is believed to me*).

§ II. Adverbial Modifiers.

661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,

- 1) Adverbs.
- 2) Adverbial expressions.

662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Fortitēr pugnāt, he fights bravely.*

See Rule VHL

REM.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is active or passive.

663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
- 2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.

664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:

- 1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means, &c.*
- 2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
- 3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
- 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *manner, means, &c.*

666. RULE XXXIV. *Manner, Means, &c.*—The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., *Dōminūm glādiō occidit, he killed his master with a sword.*

667. RULE XXXV. *Price.*—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) *Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt, the avaricious man will sell his country for gold*; (2) *Avārūs pēcūniām magnī aestimāt, the avaricious man values money highly.*

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *time*.

669. RULE XXXVI. *Time*.—Time when is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., *Hiēmē ursūs dormit, the bear sleeps in winter.*

670. RULE XXXVII. *Length of Time*.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., *Caiūs annū unū vixit, Caius lived one year*

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *place*.

672. RULE XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) *Caiūs Cortōnae vixit, Caius lived at Cortona*; (2) *Caiūs Tībūrē vixit, Caius lived at Tibur.*

673. RULE XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., *Ursūs in antrō dormit, the bear sleeps in a cave.*

674. RULE XL.—After verbs of motion,

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōmām vēnirē, to come to Rome*; (2) *In Itāliām vēnirē, to come into Italy.*
- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with one; e. g., (1) *Rōmā vēnirē, to come from Rome*; (2) *Ab Itāliā vēnirē, to come from Italy.*

675. RULE XLI.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *belli*, *hūmī*, and *militiae*, are used like names of towns; e. g., *Caiūs rurē rēdit, Caius returned from the country*; *Balbūs ēt dōmī ēt militiae fuit, Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

676. RULE XLII.—The supine in *ūm*, as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object

of that motion; e. g., *Mittit legatos pacem pettunt, he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.*

677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.

678. RULE XLIII. *Ablative Absolute.*—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., *Caesar victis hostibus, Caesar having conquered his enemies* (or, *when he had conquered*; lit., *his enemies being conquered*).

REM.—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of time (as in the above example) or that of cause; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.

679. RULE XLIV. *Prepositions with Accusative.*—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad, adversus, antē, apud, circa or circū, cis or citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, praeter, propē, propter, secundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus* (rare).

680. RULE XLV. *Prepositions with Ablative.*—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A (ab or abs), absque, coram, cum, de, e or ex, palam, prae, pro, sine, tēnus*.

681. RULE XLVI. *Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative.*—The five prepositions, *clam, in, sub, subter, and super*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM. 1.—*In* and *sub* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subter* generally takes the accusative. *Super* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

REM. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.

682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.

683. RULE XLVII. *Infinitive as Modifier of Verb.*—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting *custom, ability*, and the like; e. g., *Nōn facere possū, I am not able to do, &c.*

684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are gene-

rally introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as *time, place, manner, condition, &c.*

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

- 1) Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., *Itēr faciēbām, quūm has littērās dābām, I was making a journey when I gave these letters.*
- 2) But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., *Si quīd hābeāt, dābīt, if he has any thing, he will give it.*

SECTION V.—MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e. g., *Sātis dēnē scripsīt, he has written sufficiently well.*

687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.

688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

CHAPTER III.

USE OF MOODS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

689. THE indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., *Puēr ludīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., *Scribāt, he may write, may he write, or let him write.*
- 2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully or conditionally*; e. g., *Dārēt, he would give it (i. e. if he had it, perhaps).*

692. II. In dependent propositions,

- 1) With *ut, nē, quō, quā, quōmīnūs*, to express *purpose or*

consequence; e. g., *Venit ut scribāt, he has come to write*; *Caiō nihil obstat quominus sit beātus, nothing prevents Caius from being happy (by which he should be less happy).*

- 2) With *quūm* (*cūm*), when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g., *Quae cūm itā sint, since these things are so.*
- 3) With *licēt*, although, *quāsi, tanquā, ac si, as if, dūm, mōdō, dummodō*, provided, if only, *quāvis*, however much, however; e. g., *Imprōbūs itā vivit, quāsi nesciāt, &c., the wicked (man) lives, as if he did not know, &c.*; *Nēmō, quāvis sit locuplēs, no one, however wealthy he may be.*
- 4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as *simply possible* or as *impossible*; e. g., *Si quid hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it. Si quid hāberēt, dārēt, if he had any thing, he would give it.*
- 5) In *indirect* or *dependent* questions; e. g., *Nesciō undē sol ignēm hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*
- 6) In relative clauses, (1) to express *purpose* or *result*, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., (1) *Lēgātōs misērunt qui dicērent, they sent ambassadors to say*; (2) *Sunt qui pūtent, there are (some) who think.*

693. *Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.*—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (*pres.*, *perf. def.*, or *ful.*) is put in the *present* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (*imperf.*, *perf. indef.*, or *pluperf.*), in the *imperfect* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote a completed action; e. g.,

1. *Nesciō quid dicāt, I know not what he is saying.*
2. *Nesciō quid dixērīt, I know not what he said.*
3. *Nesciuit quid dicērēt, I knew not what he said.*
4. *Nesciuit quid dixissēt, I knew not what he had said.*

694. The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., *Portas claudē, shut the gates.*

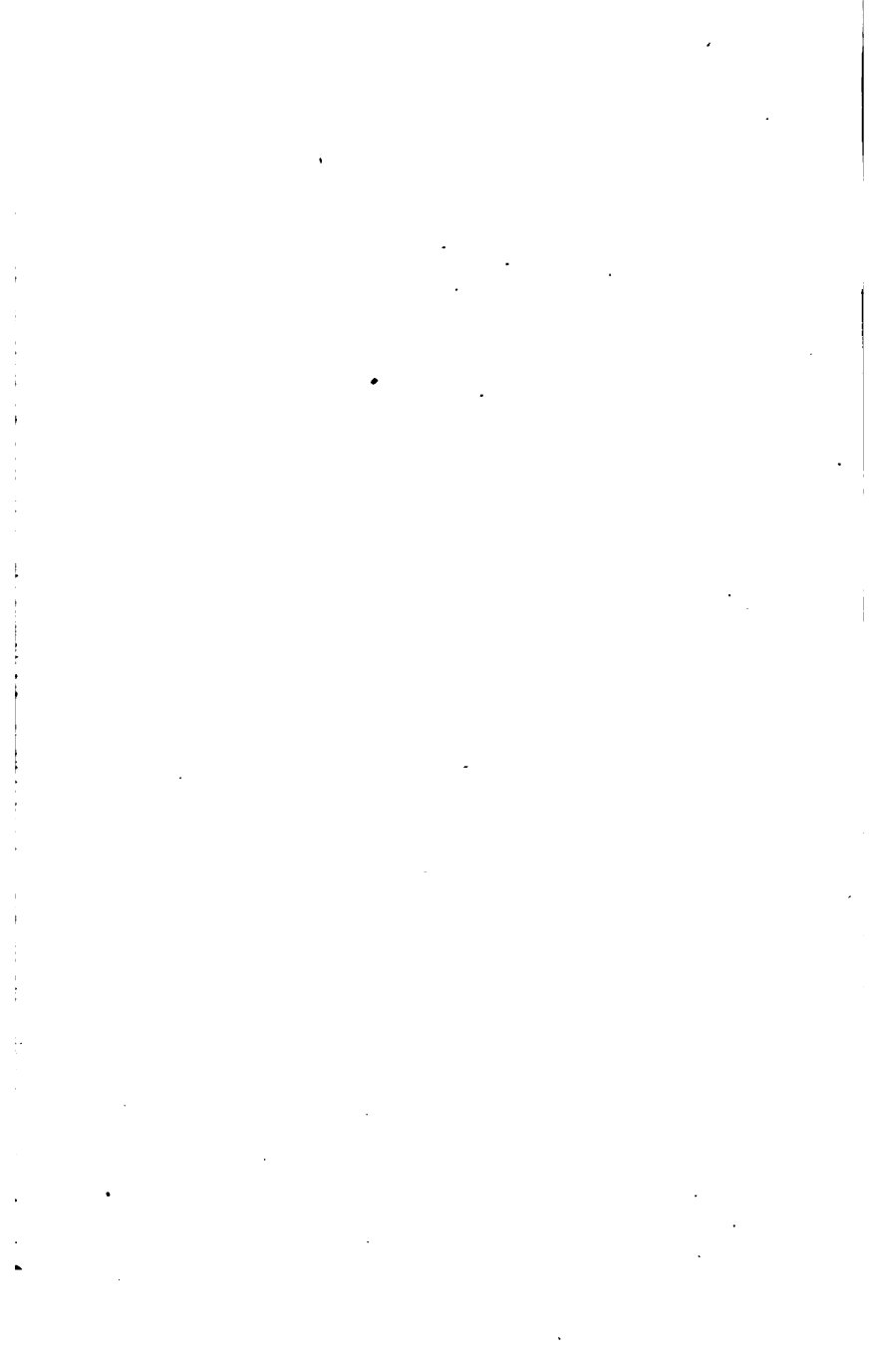
695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

- 1) As the subject of another verb; e. g., *Difficilē est iudicārē, it is difficult to judge.*

- 2) As the object of another verb; e. g., *Cūpiō săpărē, I desire to be wise.*
- 3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e. g., (1) *Dignūs āmārī, worthy to be loved*; (2) *Nōn făcărē possūm, I am not able to do, &c.*

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verba. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

- 1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.
- 2) That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.
- 3) That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.



DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

1 To think nothing of

2. To value highly.*

3. To think little of† }
To hold cheap. }

4. No stability.

Some time.

Much good.

How much pleasure.

LATIN IDIOM.

To reckon at nothing (*nikilli ducere* or *facere*).

To value at a high price (*magnè aestimare*).

To value at a little price (*parvè aestimare*).

Nothing of stability (*nihil stabilitatis*).

Something of time (*aliquid temporis*).

Much of good (*multum boni*).

How much of pleasure (*quantum voluptatis*).

REM.—Hence *no, some* (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*), *much, how much*, are to be translated by *nihil, aliquid, multum, quantum*, followed by the *gen.*

5. He did it *unwillingly*.

He *unwilling* did it.

6. It is disgraceful to lie.

To lie is disgraceful.

7. It is the *part*

_____ *duty*

_____ *business*

_____ *mark*

_____ *character*

} of a wise
man.

It is *of a wise man*.

8. To condemn a man *to death*.

To condemn a man *of the head*.

9. As many as *possible*.

As the most (*quam plurimi*).

_____ *he can or could*.

The greatest *possible*.

As the greatest (*quam maximus*).

_____ *he can or could*.

[That is, *as many* as the *most*: *as great* as greatest, &c.]

10. On the *top* of the mountain.

On the mountain *highest*.

In the *middle* of the water.

In the water *middle* (in *summo monte*; in *media aqua*).

* To value *very highly* (*maximi aestimare*).

† The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the *of* for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

11. Is going to bed.
 12. It is hard to say.
 13. Whilst they were (are, &c.) playing.
 14. The intention of writing a letter.
 15. We must cultivate virtue.
 16. Caius must write.
 17. We must believe Caius.
 18. The ways of expressing the purpose are,

He comes to see the games.

19. a) I may go.
 b) I might have gone.
 20. a) I ought to go.
 b) I ought to have gone.

LATIN IDIOM.

Is going to lie down (*cubitum*, sup.)
 It is hard in saying (*difficile est dictu*; supine).
 During playing (*inter ludendum*).
 The intention of a letter to-be-written (*scribendae epistolae*).
 Virtue is to-be-cultivated (*colenda est virtus*).
 It is to-be-written by Caius (*Caio scribendum est*).
 It is to-be-believed to Caius (*credendum est Caio*).

- { (a) Venit ut ludos spectet.
 { (b) Venit ludos spectatum (*sup.*).
 { (c) Venit ludos spectaturus.
 { (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos.
 To which add,
 (e) Venit causa (*for the purpose*) ludorum spectandorum; and
 (f) Instead of *ut*, the relative may be used:

He sent ambassadors, *qui pacem peterent* (*to sue for peace*).

Mihi ire licet (*it is permitted to me to go*).

Mihi ire licuit (*it was permitted to me to go*).

Me ire oportet.

Me ire oportuit.

CAUTIONS. .

- a. *Him, her, them* (or *he, she, they*, when they are to be translated by the *accusative*), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of *ei*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*. Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be translated by *suus*.
- b. In a sentence with *that* dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the *present infinitive*, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as *over before the time* of the principal verb.
- c. *Would, should*, after a past tense are future forms:

{ He *says* that he *will* come.
 { He *said* that he *would* come.
- d. *Thing* should be expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant:
 Thus, *of many things*, not *multorum*, but *multarum rerum*.
- e. *Cum* is written *after*, and *as one word with* the *ablatives* *me, te, &c.*: *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*.
- f. Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition*; for instance, *to smile at, &c.*
- g. *Such* in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus*; not *talis, qualis*.
- h. *That* or *those*, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
- i. When *that* introduces a *consequence*, *that not* is *ut non*, not *ne*.

That—not { for a *purpose* *ne*.
 { for a *consequence* ... *ut non*.
- j. After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive*, with *ut* or *ne*.
- k. *Who, what, which*, are often *dependent interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

A, āb, abs (*prep. with abl.*), *from, by.*

Abīrē, i, it, *to go away, depart.*

Absolvērē, v, ūt, *to acquit.*

Ac, and.

Accēdērē, cess, cess, *to approach.*

Accipērē (iō), cēp, cept, *to receive, accept.*

Accipitēr, trīs, *hawk.*

Accūsārē, āv, āt, *to accuse.*

Acēr, ācris, ācrē, *sharp, severe.*

Achillēs, is, *Achilles, a Grecian hero.*

Acies, ei, *line of battle.*

Ad (*prep. with acc.*), *to.*

Adducērē (ad and ducere), dux, duct, *to lead to.*

Adeō, so, in *such a manner.*

Adessē (ad and esse), fu, fūt, *to be present.*

Adjūmentūm, i, *aid, help.*

Adjūvārē, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help.*

Admirātiō, ōnis, *admiration.*

Admōnērē, u, ūt, *to admonish, warn.*

Adulatiō, ōnis, *flattery.*

Adulātōr, ōris, *flatterer.*

Adventūs (advenire), ūs, *approach.*

Aedificārē, āv, āt, *to build.*

Aedificiūm, i, *building, edifice.*

Aenēas, ae, Aeneas, *a Trojan prince.*

Aequitās, ātis, *equity, justice.*

Æstās, ātis, *summer.*

Aestimārē, āv, āt, *to value, prize; māgnī aestimārē, to prize highly.*

Afferre (ad and ferre), attūl, allāt, *to bring to.*

Agēr, āgrī, *field.*

Agērē, ēg, act, *to drive, lead, do; grātiās āgērē, to render thanks.*

Agnūs, i, *lamb.*

Agricolā, ae, *husbandman.*

Aliquandō, some time.

Aliquis, quā, quid, *any one, any some; aliquid temporis, some time.*

Aliūs, ā, ūd (113. R.), *other*

Alpēs, iūm, *the Alps.*

Altūs, ā, ūm, *high, lofty.*

Amārē, āv, āt, *to love.*

Ambitūs, ūs, *bribery.*

Ambulārē, āv, āt, *to walk.*

Américānūs, ā, ūm, *American.*

Amicitia, ae, *friendship.*

Amicus, i, *friend.*

Amittērē, mis, miss, *to lose.*

Amphibiūm, i, *an amphibious animal.*

Amplius (adv.), *more, further.*

Amplūs, ā, ūm, *ample, large.*

An, interrog. part., *used in double questions, 482.*

Anchisēa, ae, *Anchises, the father of Aeneas.*

Anguis, is, m. or f., *snake.*

Angustiae, ārūm, *a narrow pass, defile.*

Animāl, ālis, *animal.*

Animūs, i, *mind, soul.*

Annuērē, nu, nūt, *to assent, to give assent.*

Annūs, i, *year.*

Antē (prep. with acc.), *before.*

Antea (adv.), *before.*

Antrūm, i, *cave.*

Anulūs, i, *ring.*

Apērirē, ēru, ert, *to uncover, to open.*

Apprōpinquārē, āv, āt, *to approach.*

Aquā, ae, *water.*

Aquārī, āt, *to bring water.*

Aquilā, ae, *eagle.*

Arā, ae, *altar.*

Arārē, āv, āt, *to plough.*

Arbōr, ōris, f., *tree.*

Argentūm, i, *silver.*

Armigēr, I, *armor-bearer*.
 Arripērē (iō), ipu, ept, to *snatch*,
seize.
 Ara, artīs, *art*.
 Arx, arcis, *citadel, tower*.
 Ascāniūs, I, *Ascanius, son of Aeneas*.
 Asiniūs, I, *ass*.
 Aspergērē (or adaspergērē), era, ers, to *sprinkle*.
 At, *but*.
 Athēnas, arūm, *Athens, city of Greece*.
 Athēniensis (*Athēnas*), ē, *Athenian, pl., the Athenians*.
 Atqui (conj.), *but, now* (as used in reasoning).
 Attāmēn, *but, but yet*.
 Attingērē (ad and tangērē), tīg, tact, to *attain, reach*.
 Auctōr, ōris, *author*.
 Auctumnūs, I, *autumn*.
 Audax, ācia, *daring, audacious*.
 Audirē, iv, it, to *hear*.
 Augērē, aux, auct, to *increase*.
 Aureūs (*aurūm*), ā, ūm, *golden*.
 Aurūm, I, *gold*.
 Aut, or; aut—aut, *either—or*.
 Autēn, *but*.
 Auxiliūm, I, *aid*.
 Avāriciā, ae, *avarice*.
 Avārūs, ā, ūm, *avaricious*.
 Avis, is, *bird*.

B.

Balbūs, I, *Balbus, a man's name*.
 Barbā, ae, *beard*.
 Beātē (*beatus*), *happily*.
 Beātūs, ā, ūm, *happy*.
 Bellūm, I, *war*.
 Bēnē, *well*.
 Bēnēficiūm, I, *benefit*.
 Bēnignūs, ā, ūm, *kind*.
 Bibērē, bib, bibīt, to *drink*.
 Bienniūm, I, *two years, space of two years*.
 Bonūs, ā, ūm, *good*.
 Brachiūm, I, *arm*.
 Brēvis, ē, *short*.
 Brūtūs, I, *Brutus, a Roman consul*.

C.

Cādērē, cēcid, cās, to *fall*.
 Caecūs, ā, ūm, *blind*.
 Caesar, āria, *Caesar, a distinguished Roman general*.
 Caiūs, I, *Caius, a man's name*.
 Cālāmitās, ātis, *misfortune, calamity*.
 Candidūs, ā, ūm, *white*.
 Cānērē, cēcin, cant, to *sing*.
 Cānis, is, c., *dog*.
 Cantārē (*canēre*), āv, āt, to *sing*.
 Cāpērē (iō), cēp, capt, to *take, receive*.
 Captivūs, ā, ūm, *capt., ive*.
 Cāpūt, itis, *head; cāpitīs, of the head, to death*.
 Carpērē, carpe, carpt, to *gather, to pluck, to card*.
 Carthāginiensis (*Carthago*), ē, *Carthaginian*.
 Carthāgō, inis, *Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa*.
 Castigārē, āv, āt, to *chastise*.
 Castrā, ōrūm, *camp*.
 Cātēnā, ae, *chain*.
 Cāvērē, cāv, caut, to *take care, to be on one's guard against*.
 Cēlēbēr, bris, brē, *celebrated*.
 Cēlēritēr, *quickly*.
 Certāmēn, inis, *contest*.
 Certūs, ā, ūm, *certain*.
 Christiānūs, I, *Christian*.
 Cībūs, I, *food*.
 Cicērō, ōnis, *Cicero, the great Roman orator*.
 Cingērē, nx, nct, to *surround*.
 Circumdārē (*circum and dāre*), dēd, dāt, to *surround*.
 Cis, *on this side*.
 Civilis (*civis*), ē, *civil*.
 Civis, is, *citizen*.
 Civitās (*civis*), ātis, *state*.
 Claudērē, claus, claus, to *shut*.
 Olēmēns, entis, *mild, merciful*.
 Olāmentīā, ae, *mildness, clemency*.
 Clipeūs, I, *shield*.
 Coelūm, I, *heaven, the heavens*.
 Coenā, ae, *supper, feast*.
 Cōgītārē, āv, āt, to *think, to think about*.
 Cōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *known*.

Cōgnoscerē, nōv, nīt, to ascertain.
 Cōlerē, cōlu, cult, to till, cultivate,
 practise.
 Collōquīum, i, conference.
 Cōlōr ōris, color.
 Cōlumbā, ae, dove.
 Committērē, mīa, miss, to engage;
 proeliūm committērē, to engage
 battle.
 Compārārē, āv, āt, to procure, raise,
 levy.
 Compellērē, pūl, puls, to compel,
 drive.
 Compescērē, escu, to restrain, re-
 press.
 Complērē, ēv, ēt, to fill.
 Comprēhendērē, nīd, ns, to arrest.
 Concertārē, āv, āt, to contend, quarrel.
 Conciliūm, i, council, meeting.
 Condērē (con [cūm] and dāre), dīd,
 dīt, to build, found.
 Conditīō, ōnis, condition, terms.
 Confūgērē (iō), fūg, to flee for re-
 fuge.
 Conjux, ūgīa, spouse, wife, husband.
 Conservārē, āv, āt, to preserve.
 Consiliūm, i, advice, instruction.
 Conspicērē (iō), spex, spect, to see,
 discover.
 Constat (impers.), it is known, is an
 admitted fact.
 Constitūērē, u, ūt, to arrange, ap-
 point.
 Construērē, strux, struct, to build,
 construct.
 Consul, ūlīa, consul, the Roman chief
 magistrate. [advice.
 Consulērē, sūlu, sult, to consult, ask
 Contemnērē, ps, pt, to despise.
 Contentūa, ā, ūm, contented, content.
 Continērē, u, tent, to restrain, confine.
 Continuūa, ā, ūm, successive.
 Contrā (prep. with acc.), against.
 Convēnīrē (cōn [cūm] and ventre),
 vēn, vent, to come together.
 Convertērē, t, s, to turn, convert.
 Cōpia, arūm, forces.
 Cōquērē, x, ct, to cook, to bake, to
 ripen.
 Cōr, cordīa, n., heart.
 Cōrām (prep. with abl.), before, in pre-
 sence of; adv., openly, in person.

Cōronā, ae, crown, garland.
 Corpūs, ōris, body.
 Corrigērē, rex, rect, to correct.
 Corrupērē, rūp, rupt, to mislead,
 corrupt.
 Crābrō, ōnis, wasp.
 Crēbēr, brā, brūm, frequent.
 Crēdērē, crēdid, crēdīt, to believe,
 put confidence in.
 Crescērē, crēv, crēt, to increase, to
 wax (as moon).
 Culpā, ae, fault, blame.
 Cūn (prep. with abl.), with.
 Cunctūa, ā, ūm, all as a whole.
 Cūpērē (iō), iv (i), it, to desire.
 Cūpiditās, ātis, desire, passion.
 Cūpidūs, ā, ūm, desirous of.
 Cūrārē (cura), āv, āt, to take care
 of.
 Currērē, cūcurr, curs, to run.
 Currūs, ūs, chariot.
 Custōdirē (custos), iv, it, to guard.

D.

Damnārē, āv, āt, to condemn.
 Dārē, dēd, dāt, to give.
 Dē (prep. with abl.), from, about,
 concerning.
 Dēcēm, ten.
 Dēcernērē, crēv, crēt, to decree, de-
 cide.
 Dēcīmūs, ā, ūm, tenth.
 Dēcīpērē (iō), cēp, cept, to deceive.
 Dēdērē, dēdīd, dēdīt, to surren-
 der.
 Dēfendērē, d, s, to defend.
 Dēglūbērē, ups, upt, to skin, flay.
 Dēlērē, lēv, lēt, to destroy.
 Dēmonstrārē, āv, āt, to show, demon-
 strate.
 Dēprēhendērē, d, s, to seize, catch.
 Dēterrērē, u, it, to deter, prevent.
 Dēvincērē, vic, vict, to conquer.
 Dicēre, dix, dict, to say.
 Didō, ōnis, Dido, the foundress of
 Carthage.
 Diēs, ēī, day.
 Difficilis, ē, difficult.
 Dignūs, ā, ūm, worthy.
 Dilāniārē, āv, āt, to tear in pieces.
 Diligens, tīs, diligent.

Diligentia (*diligens*), *ae*, diligence.
 Dimittere, *mīa*, *missa*, to dismiss.
 Discere, *didic*, to learn.
 Discipulus, *i*, pupil.
 Disjungere, *x*, *ct*, to separate.
 Dividere, *vis*, *vis*, to divide.
 Divina, *ā*, *um*, divine.
 Divitiacus, *i*, *Divitiacus*, a man's name.
 Docere, *u*, *t*, to teach.
 Dolere, *u*, *it*, to grieve.
 Dolor, *oris*, *pai*, grief, sorrow.
 Dominus, *i*, master as owner.
 Domus, *us* or *i*, *f*, house; *dōmī*, at home.
 Donare, *av*, *at*, to give, present.
 Donum, *i*, gift.
 Dormire, *iv*, *it*, to sleep.
 Dubitare, *av*, *at*, to doubt.
 Ducenti, *ae*, *ā*, two hundred.
 Ducere, *dux*, *duct*, to lead.
 Dum, *while*.
 Dummodo, *if*, *but*, *provided*.
 Duo, *ae*, *ō*, two.
 Duodecim, *twelve*.
 Durare, *av*, *at*, to last.
 Dux, *dūcis*, leader, guide.

E

Edere, *ed*, *ēs* (420), to eat.
 Educere (*e* and *ducere*), *dux*, *duct*, to lead forth.
 Efficere (*iō*), *fēc*, *fect*, to effect, accomplish.
 Ego, *mei*, *acc.*, *i*.
 Elegantiā, *ae*, elegance.
 Elephas, *antis*, *m*, elephant.
 Emere, *em*, *empt*, to buy, purchase.
 Enim, *for*, *indeed*.
 Enumerare, *av*, *at*, to enumerate.
 Epistola, *ae*, letter, epistle.
 Epitome, *es*, abridgment.
 Eques, *itis*, horseman.
 Equitatus, *us*, cavalry.
 Equus, *i*, horse.
 Erga (*prep.* with *acc.*), towards.
 Ergo (*conj.*), therefore.
 Errare, *av*, *at*, to err.
 Erudire, *iv*, *it*, to instruct.
 Esse, *fu*, *fuit*, to be; *est*, *is*, *it is*.
 Et, *and*; *et—et*, both—and.

Etiam, *also*, *even*; *etiam* atque *etiam*, *again and again*.
 Evertere, *rt*, *rs*, to pull down, to overthrow.
 Evolare, *av*, *at*, to fly away, to flee from.
 Ex (*prep.* with *abl.*), from.
 Excitare, *av*, *at*, to excite, arouse.
 Exclamare, *av*, *at*, to exclaim, cry out.
 Excruciare, *av*, *at*, to torture.
 Exercere, *u*, *it*, to practise, exercise.
 Exercitus, *us*, army.
 Exorare, *av*, *at*, to supplicate.
 Expellere, *pul*, *pula*, to expel, banish.
 Exponere, *pōn*, *pōit*, to set forth, explain.
 Expugnare (*ex* and *pugnare*), *av*, *at*, to storm.
 Expectare, *av*, *at*, to expect.

F

Fabulosus, *ā*, *um* (*fabula*), fabulous.
 Facere (*iō*), *fēc*, *fact*, to do, make, act.
 Facies, *ei*, face, appearance.
 Facilis, *e*, easy.
 Fallax (*fallere*), *acis*, false, deceptive.
 Fames, *is*, hunger.
 Faustulus, *i*, *Faustulus*, an Italian shepherd.
 Favere, *fav*, *faut*, to favor.
 Felicitas, *atis*, happiness.
 Ferrē, *tul*, *lat* (414), to bear.
 Ferrum, *i*, iron.
 Fidelis, *e*, faithful.
 Fides, *ei*, faith, fidelity; *fidem* violare, to break one's word.
 Fieri, *fact* (416), to become, be made.
 Figura, *ae*, figure.
 Filiā, *ae* (*D. pl. filiabus*), daughter.
 Filius, *i*, son.
 Finire (*finis*), *iv*, *it*, to finish.
 Finis, *is* (*m.* and *f.* sing., *m. pl.*), end.
 Firmus, *ā*, *um*, firm.
 Flagitium, *i*, crime.
 Flere, *flev*, *flet*, to weep.
 Florere (*flor*), *u*, to flourish, bloom.
 Florescere (*florere*), to begin to bloom.

Flūs, ōris, *flower*.
 Fluērē, x, x, *to flow*.
 Flūmēn, inīs, *river, stream*.
 Foedūs, ēris, *treaty*.
 Fortis, ē, *brave*.
 Fortitēr (fortis), *bravely*.
 Fortūnā, ae, *fortune*.
 Frangērē, frēg, fract, *to break*.
 Frāter, tris, *brother*.
 Fraudārē, av, at, *to defraud*.
 Frētūs, ā, ūm, *relying on*.
 Frīgūs, ōris, *cold*.
 Frūtex, icis, m., *shrub*.
 Fūgā, ae, *flight*.
 Fūgārē (fūgā), av, at, *to put to night*.
 Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee*.
 Fundūs, i, *estate, farm*.
 Fungī, funct, *to discharge, fulfil*.
 Furtūm, i, *theft*.
 Futūrūs, ā, ūm, *future*.

G.

Gallīcūs (Galliā), ā, ūm, *Gallic*.
 Gallūs, i, a *Gaul*.
 Gēnēr, i, *son-in-law*.
 Gēnūs, ēris, *kind, nature*.
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage (as war)*.
 Germāniā, ae, *Germany*.
 Glādiūs, i, *sword*.
 Glōriā, ae, *glory*.
 Graeci, ōrūm, *the Greeks*.
 Grānūm, i, *grain*.
 Grātiā, ae, *gratitude, favor; pl., thanks*.
 Grāvīs, ē, *heavy*.
 Grex, ēgis, m. *flock, herd*.

H.

Hāberē, u, it, *to have*.
 Hābitārē (habēre), av, at, *to inhabit*.
 Haedūs, i, *kid*.
 Hannibāl, ālis, *Hannibal*.
 Hastā, ae, *spear*.
 Hērōs, ōis, *hero*.
 Hesternūs, ā, ūm, *of yesterday*.
 Hic, haec, hōc, *this*.
 Hiems, ēmis, *winter*.
 Histōriā, ae, *history*.

Hōmō, inīs, *man*.
 Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*.
 Hortūlūs (hortūs), *little garden*.
 Hortūs, i, *garden*.
 Hostis, is, *enemy*.
 Hūmānūs, ā, ūm, *human, natural to man*.
 Hūmērūs, i, *shoulder*.

I.

Ibī, there.
 Idēm, eādēm, idem, *same*.
 Ideō, therefore.
 Igītūr, therefore.
 Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant*.
 Ignāvūs, ā, ūm, *indolent, cowardly*.
 Ignis, is, m., *fire, heat*.
 Ignōrātiō, ōnis, *ignorance*.
 Ignoscērē, ōv, ōt, *to pardon*.
 Illē, illā, illūd, *that, he, she, it*.
 Illustrārē, av, at, *to illumine, to enlighten*.
 Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense*.
 Immergērē, rs, rs, *to plunge into*.
 Immōbilis, ē, *immovable*.
 Immortālis, ē, *immortal*.
 Impēdirē, iv, it, *to impede, hinder*.
 Impendērē, *to overhang, threaten*.
 Impērārē, av, at, *to command; imperātā, ōrūm, commands*.
 Impērātōr (impērāre), ōris, *commander*.
 Impētūs, ūs, *attack*.
 Impiūs, ā, ūm, *impious*.
 Imprōbūs, ā, ūm, *bad, wicked*.
 Imprūdēns, entis, *imprudent*.
 In (prep. with acc. or abl.), *with acc., into, to, against; with abl., in*.
 Incendērē, d, s, *to set on fire, to burn*.
 Inceptūm, i, *beginning*.
 Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.
 Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *unknown*.
 Incōlā (in and colēre), ae, *inhabitant*.
 Incōlūmis, ē, *safe, uninjured*.
 Incrēdībīlis (in and credēre), ē, *incredible*.
 Indicērē, dix, dict, *to declare (as war)*.
 Indignūs, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.
 Indoctūs, ā, ūm, *unlearned*.

Indulgere, la, it, to indulge.
 Industriā, ae, industry.
 Inferre, intul, illat (414), to wage.
 Infra (prep. with acc.), below.
 Infligere, flix, flict, to inflict.
 Ingenium, i, talent, ability.
 Injuria, ae, injury, wrong done.
 Innocens, tia, innocent.
 Innoxius, ā, ūm, harmless.
 Instruere, strux, struct, to arrange,
 array.
 Intelligere, lex, lect, to understand.
 Inter (prep. with acc.), between, during.
 Interdum, sometimes.
 Interesse, fu, fuit, to be engaged in.
 Interficere (iſ), fec, fect, to kill.
 Interim, in the mean time, meanwhile.
 Intervallum, i, distance, space.
 Intra (prep. with acc.), within.
 Inutilis, ē, useless.
 Invadere (in and vadere), vā, vā, to invade.
 Invenire, ven, vent, to find.
 Invidere, vid, vis, to envy.
 Invitus, ā, ūm, unwilling.
 Ipse, ā, ūm, self, he himself.
 Ira, ae, anger.
 Ire, iv, it, to go.
 Irritare, av, at, to irritate.
 Is, eā, id, he, she, it, that.
 Istē, ā, ūd, that.
 Italia, ae, Italy.
 Itaque, therefore.
 Iter, itinēria, journey, way.
 Iterum, again.

J.

Jubere, juss, juss, to direct, order.
 Jucundus, ā, ūm, pleasant, delightful.
 Jūdex, icia, judge.
 Judicare, av, at, to judge.
 Jurare, av, at, to swear.
 Justus, ā, ūm, just, fair.

L.

Lābor, ōria, labor.
 Lāborare, av, at, to labor.
 Lāna, ae, wool.

Lātinus, i, Latinus, a king of Latium.
 Laudare, av, at, to praise.
 Laus, dia, praise.
 Lavare, lav, laut, or lavat, to wash.
 Lavinia, ae, Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.
 Legatus, i, ambassador.
 Legere, leg, lect, to read.
 Legio, ōria, legion, body of foot.
 Lenis, ē, mild, merciful.
 Leō, ōria, lion.
 Lex, legis, law.
 Liber, libri, book.
 Liber, ā, ūm, free.
 Liberi, ōria, children.
 Licet (impers. v.), it is lawful.
 Licet, although.
 Liquecere, licu, to melt.
 Litterae, arum (pl.), letter, epistle.
 Locuples, etia, wealthy, rich.
 Locus, i (pl. loci or loca), place.
 Loqui, locut, to speak.
 Lucere, lux, to shine.
 Luctus, ūs, grief, sorrow.
 Lūcia, i, grove.
 Ludere, lus, lūs, to play.
 Ludus, i, play, sport.
 Lūgere, lux, to grieve, mourn, weep for.
 Lūna, ae, moon.
 Lūpus, i, wolf.
 Luscinia, ae, nightingale.
 Lux, lucia, light.

M.

Māculare, av, at, to stain, to bluish.
 Magister, tri, master as teacher.
 Magnitudo (magnus), inia, greatness, size.
 Magnus, ā, ūm, great, large; magni, at a great price, highly; magnū est, it is a great thing.
 Major, ūs (comp. of magnus), greater, larger.
 Māle (malus), badly.
 Mallē, mālu (410), to prefer.
 Mālum, i, evil, misfortune.
 Mālus, ā, ūm, bad.
 Mānere, na, ne, to remain.

Mānūs, ūs, *f.*, hand, force.
Mārē, īs, sea.
Mārīnūs, ā, ūm, marine, of the sea.
Mātēr, trīs, mother.
Matrōnā, ae, matron.
Maximūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of magnus*), greatest, very great; **maxīmī**, at a very great price.
Mēdicūs, ī, physician.
Mēdiūs, ā, ūm, middle, midst of, middle of, 267.
Mēl, mellis, honey.
Mendāciūm, lie, falsehood.
Mens, tīs, mind, the reasoning faculty.
Mēsis, īs, m., month.
Mētuerē, u, to fear.
Mētūs, ūs, fear.
Meīr, ā, ūm (*masc. voc. sing. mi*), my.
Micārē, u, to glitter, shine.
Milēs, itīs, soldier.
Militiā, ae, military service; **militiae** (*gen. sing.*), in war, on service.
Millē, thousand.
Minōr, ūs (*comp. of parvus*), smaller.
Mirābilis, ē, wonderful.
Misēr, ā, ūm, miserable, wretched.
Misērēri, ert or ērit, to pity.
Misērēt (*impers. verb.*), it pities, one pities..
Mittērē, mīs, miss, to send.
Mōbilis, ē, movable.
Mōdō, only.
Mōnērē, u, it, to advise, admonish.
Mons, tīs, m., mountain.
Monstrārē, āv, āt, to show.
Mordērē, mōmord, mors, to bite.
Mors, tīs, death.
Mortālis (*mors*), ē, mortal.
Mōvērē, mōv, mōt, to move.
Mūliēr, ēris, woman.
Multitūdō (*multūs*), inīs, multitude.
Multūs, ā, ūm, much, many; **multā** (*neut. pl.*), many things; **multūm** **bōnī**, much good; **multūm** **tempōris**, much time.
Mūrūs, ī, wall.
Mūtārē, āv, āt, to change.

N.

Nām, for
Namquē, for.

Nārē, nāv, to swim.
Narrārē, āv, āt, to relate, narrate.
Narrātiō (*narrārē*), narration, narrative.
Nasci, nāt, to be born.
Nātiō, ōnis, nation.
Nē, interrog. particle, 287 and 288.
Nē (*used with imperat. and subj.*), not.
Nēc, neither; **nēc—nēc**, neither—nor.
Nēgligērē, lex, lect, to disregard.
Nēmō (*inīs*, not in good use), nobody, no one.
Nēquidēm, not even, generally with the emphatic word between the two parts; as, **nē pōpūlus quidēm**, not even the people.
Nērē, nēv, nēt, to spin.
Nescirē, iv, it, not to know, to be ignorant of.
Nidūs, ī, nest.
Nihil, nothing.
Nimiūs, ā, ūm, too much, excessive.
Nix, nivis, snow.
Nōcērē, u, it, to hurt.
Nollē, nōlu (410), to be unwilling.
Nōmēn, inīs, name.
Nōn, not; **nōn solum—sed etiam**, not only—but also.
Nondūm, not yet.
Nonnē, interrog. particle; expects ans, yea. 288, REM.
Nostēr, trā, trūm, our.
Nōvembēr, brīs (*abl. ī*), November.
Nox, noctis, night.
Nubēs, īs, cloud.
Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), no, no one.
Nūm, interrog. particle; expects ans, no. 288, REM. [*Rome.*]
Numā, ae, Numa, second king of Nunc, now.
Nūmērārē, āv, āt, to number.
Nūmērūs, ī, number.
Nunquām, never.
Nuntiārē (*nuntiūs*), āv, āt, to announce, report.
Nuntiūs, ī, messenger.

O.

O (interjection), O.
O si, O if, would that.

Obessē, fu, fūt, *to be prejudicial to.*
 Oblivisci, oblit, *to forget.*
 Obſes, idis, *hostage.*
 Obſtare, ſtāt, ſtāt, *to oppose, prevent.*
 Obtinere, inu, ent, *to acquire, obtain.*
 Occaſiō, ōnis, *occasion.*
 Occidere (ob and cadere), cid, cis, *to kill.*
 Occidere (ob and cadere), cid, cas, *to fall.*
 Occultare (occultare), av, at, *to conceal, hide.*
 Octō, eight.
 Oculū, i, *eye.*
 Odiū, i, *hatred.*
 Officiū, i, *duty.*
 Olim, *once, formerly.*
 Omnino, *in all.*
 Omnia, ē, *all, every.*
 Oportet (impera), it behooves, one ought.
 Optio, ōnis, *choice.*
 Opus, eris, *work.*
 Oratio, ōnis, *oration.*
 Orator, ōris, *orator.*
 Ornare, av, at, *to adorn.*
 Ovis, is, *sheep.*

P.

Pabulari, at, *to forage.*
 Palliū, i, *cloak.*
 Parare, av, at, *to prepare.*
 Parere, u, it, *to obey.*
 Parcere, perece, parci, *to spare.*
 Pars, tis, *part.*
 Parvus, ā, ūm, *small, little; parvum, little, a little; parvi, at a low price; parvi aestimare, to think little of.*
 Pastor (pascere), ōris, *shepherd.*
 Pater, tris, *father.*
 Patria, ae, *native country.*
 Paucus, ā, ūm, *little, few.*
 Pauper, eris, *a poor man.*
 Pausaniās, ae, *Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan general.*
 Pavō, ōnis, *peacock.*
 Pax, pacis, *peace.*
 Peccare, av, at, *to sin, do wrong.*
 Pecunia, ae, *money.*
 Pendere, pepend, *to hang.*

Pēr (prep. with acc.), *through.*
 Perdere, did, dit, *to waste.*
 Perfidia, ae, *perfidy.*
 Perfugium, i, *refuge.*
 Periculōsus (periculum), ā, ūm, *dangerous.*
 Peritus, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in.*
 Perniciēs, ei, *destruction.*
 Perpetuo, *for ever.*
 Perspicere (iō), ex, ect, *to perceive, see.*
 Persuadere, s, a, *to persuade.*
 Pertimescere, timu, *to fear greatly.*
 Pervenire, ven, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*
 Pes, pedis, *foot.*
 Petere, iv or i, it, *to seek.*
 Philosophus, i, *philosopher.*
 Pietas, atis, *piety, faithfulness.*
 Piget (impera), it irks, one is grieved at; mē piget, *I am grieved.*
 Piscis, is, *m., fish.*
 Pius, ā, ūm, *pious.*
 Placare, av, at, *to appease.*
 Placere, u, it, *to please.*
 Planē, *plainly.*
 Plurimus, ā, ūm (superl. of multus), *very much or great; pl., very many.*
 Poema, atis, *poem.*
 Poenitet (impera), it repents, one repents.
 Poeta, ae, *poet.*
 Ponere, pōnu, pōsit, *to place.*
 Pons, tis, *m., bridge.*
 Populāris (populus), ē, *popular.*
 Populus, i, *people.*
 Porta, ae, *gate.*
 Poscere, pōscu, *to demand.*
 Possē, pōtu (irreg., 407), *to be able.*
 Possidere, ed, ess, *to possess.*
 Post (prep. with acc.), *after.*
 Postera, ūm (mas. not used), *next, following.*
 Postulare, av, at, *to demand.*
 Potiri, it, *to get possession of.*
 Prae (prep. with abl.), *before, in comparison with.*
 Praebere, u, it, *to furnish, offer.*
 Praeceptum, i, *precept, instruction.*
 Praeda, ae, *booty.*
 Praeditus, ā, ūm, *endued with.*

Praemitterē, mīa, miss, to send before.
 Praeparāre, āv, āt, to prepare.
 Praesens, tīs, present.
 Praestans, tīs, excellent.
 Praestāt (impers.), it is better.
 Praeteritūa, ā, ūm, past; neut. pl.,
 the past.
 Prātūm, ī, meadow.
 Pretiosūa, ā, ūm, valuable.
 Primūa, ā, ūm, first.
 Princeps (primūa and cāpere), īpīs,
 chief, leader.
 Privāre, āv, āt, to deprive.
 Privātūa, ā, ūm, private, personal.
 Prō (prep. with abl.), for, before.
 Prōbūa, ā, ūm, honest.
 Prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt, to profit.
 Prōditūa, ōnīs, treachery.
 Prōditōr, ōrīs, traitor.
 Prōducēre, dux, duct, to lead for-
 ward, or out.
 Proeliūm, ī, battle.
 Prōficisci, fect, to set out, to march.
 Prōmittēre, mīa, miss, to promise.
 Prōmōvēre, mōv, mōt, to move for-
 ward, advance.
 Prōpensūa, ā, ūm, inclined to.
 Prōpiōr, ūs (comp.), nearer.
 Prōvidūa, ā, ūm, cautious, prudent.
 Prōvinciā (pro and vincere), ae, pro-
 vince.
 Proximūa, ā, ūm, nearest, next.
 Prūdēns, tīs, prudent, cautious.
 Prudentiā (prudens), ae, prudence.
 Pūdōr, ōrīs, shame, modesty.
 Puellā, ae, girl.
 Puēr, ī, boy.
 Pugnāre (pugnā), āv, āt, to fight.
 Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm, beautiful.
 Punire, iv, it, to punish.
 Pūtāre, āv, āt, to think, regard.

Q.

Quaestiō, ōnīs, question.
 Quām (adv.), how; quām multī, how
 many; with superl. intensive, as
 quām maximūa, as great as pos-
 sible.
 Quām (conj.), than.
 Quamvis, however, however much.
 Quantūa, ā, ūm, how great.

Quāre, wherefore.
 Quartūa, ā, ūm, fourth.
 Quāsi, as if.
 Quatuōr, four.
 Quē (always appended to another
 word), and.
 Quī, quae, quōd, who, which, that.
 Quī, quae, quōd (interrog.), who,
 which, what?
 Quia, because.
 Quiescēre, āv, ēt, to rest, be quiet.
 Quin (478), that not, but that.
 Quinquē, five.
 Quintūa, ā, ūm, fifth.
 Quis, quae, quid (interrog. suba.),
 who, which, what?
 Quō, that, in order that.
 Quōminūa (472), that not, from.
 Quōquē, also.
 Quūm, when; quūm—tūm, both—
 and.

R.

Ratiō, ōnīs, reason.
 Rēcipēre (iō), cēp, cept, to receive.
 Rēcordārī, āt, to remember, call to
 mind.
 Rēdirē, ī, it, to return.
 Rēducēre, dux, duct, to lead back.
 Rēferre, tūl, lāt, to relate.
 Rēgēre, rex, rect, to rule, govern.
 Rēgīnā, ae, queen.
 Rēgnāre, āv, āt, to reign.
 Rēgnūm, ī, kingdom, government.
 Rēliquūa, ā, ūm, remaining, the re-
 main.
 Rēpērīre, rēpēr, rēpert, to find.
 Rēs, rēi, thing, affair.
 Rēsistēre, stit, to resist.
 Respondēre, d, a, to answer.
 Responsūm, ī, answer, response.
 Respuēre, pu, to reject.
 Reūs, ī, criminal.
 Rēvertēre, vert, vers, to return, to
 back.
 Rex, rēgis, king.
 Rhēnūa, ī, Rhine.
 Rīdēre, ris, ris, to laugh, laugh at.
 Rōbustūa, ā, ūm, robust, strong.
 Rōgāre, āv, āt, to ask, entreat.
 Rōmā, ae, Rome.
 Rōmānūa (Rēmā), ā, ūm, Roman.

Römülüs, *i*, *Romulus*.
 Rötundüs, *ä*, *üm*, round.
 Ruérë, *ru*, *rüt* (*ruit*), to rush.
 Rümör, *öris*, rumor.
 Rumpérë, *rüp*, *rupt*, to break, violate.
 Rüs, *rüsä*, *n*, country.

S.

Säcerdös, *ötis*, priest, priestess.
 Saepë, often.
 Saevirë (*saevüs*), *iv* (*i*), *it*, to rage.
 Sägitä, *ae*, arrow.
 Saltärë, *äv*, *ät*, to dance.
 Sälüs, *ötis*, safety.
 Sänärë, *äv*, *ät*, to cure, reform.
 Sancirë, *x*, *ct*, to enact, confirm.
 Sanguis, *inäs*, *m*, blood.
 Säpërë, *iv* or *i*, to be wise.
 Säpiens, *entis*, wise.
 Säpientiä, *ae*, wisdom.
 Sätärë, *äv*, *ät*, to satisfy.
 Sätis, enough.
 Sceptrum, *i*, scepter.
 Scientiä, *ae*, knowledge.
 Scipië, *önis*, *Scipio*, a distinguished Roman.
 Scirë, *iv*, *it*, to know.
 Scribërë, *ps*, *pt*, to write.
 Sëcundüs, *ä*, *üm*, second.
 Sëd, but.
 Sëmën, *inäs*, seed.
 Sempër, always.
 Sempiternüs, *ä*, *üm*, lasting, eternal.
 Sënätör, *öris*, senator.
 Sënätüs (*senex*), *üs*, senate.
 Sënectüs, *ötis*, old age.
 Sënex, *sënäs*, an old man.
 Sensüs, *üs*, feeling, perception.
 Sententiä, *ae*, sentiment.
 Sentirë, *s*, *a*, to perceive, to feel (as pain).
 Sëpëlrë, *pëlv* or *i*, *pult*, to bury.
 Sermö, *önis*, discourse.
 Servärë, *äv*, *ät*, to keep, observe, save.
 Servirë, *iv*, *it*, to serve, be slave to.
 Serviüs, *i*, *Servius*, a man's name.
 Servüs, *i*, slave.
 Seu—seu, whether—or, either—or.

Sex, six.
 Si, if.
 Sic, so.
 Sicüt, so as, just as.
 Simplex, *icis*, simple.
 Simulätid, *önis*, assumed appearance, pretence.
 Sinë (*prep. with abl.*), without.
 Sinius, *üs*, bosom.
 Sirën, *önis*, siren.
 Sitirë, *iv*, *it*, to thirst.
 Sivë—sivë, whether—or.
 Söcrätës, *is*, *Socrates*, the celebrated Grecian philosopher.
 Söl, *sölis*, *m*, sun.
 Somnüs, *i*, sleep.
 Sönüs, *i*, sound.
 Sörör, *öris*, sister.
 Spargërë, *rs*, *ra*, to scatter, sow.
 Spëciösüs (*species*), *ä*, *üm*, specious, plausible.
 Spectärë (*specërë*), *äv*, *ät*, to look at, behold.
 Spërärë, *äv*, *ät*, to hope for.
 Spës, *ei*, hope.
 Splendens, *tis*, shining.
 Spöliärë, *äv*, *ät*, to rob of, de spoil.
 Stäbilitäs, *ätis*, firmness, stability.
 Stätüm (*stäre*), immediately.
 Stellä, *ae*, star.
 Stüdërë, *u*, to study, strive for.
 Stüdiösüs, *ä*, *üm*, studious.
 Stultitiä, *ae*, folly.
 Suädërë, *s*, *a*, to advise.
 Subvënrë, *vën*, *vent*, to aid.
 Succurrërë, *curr*, *curs*, to aid, succor.
 Suërë, *su*, *süt*, to sew, stitch.
 Suï, *sibi* (267), of himself, herself, &c.
 Sullä, *ae*, *Sulla*, a man's name.
 Summüs, *ä*, *üm*, highest, greatest, sometimes the top of (267); summüs mons, the top of the mountain.
 Sumptüs, *üs*, expense.
 Süpërärë, *äv*, *ät*, to surpass, conquer, to go over.
 Süperficiës, *ei*, surface.
 Süperväcutis, *ä*, *üm*, unnecessary.
 Supplicatiö, *önis*, thanksgiving.

Sāpra (*adv. and prep. with acc.*), *above.*

Sustinērē, *u*, *tent, to sustain, endure.*

Suūs, *ā, ūm*, *his, her, &c.*

T.

Tācērē, *u, it*, *to be silent, to pass over in silence.*

Tām, *so; tām—quām*, *so—as.*

Tāmēn, *yet.*

Tangērē, *tētūg*, *tact, to touch.*

Tanquām, *as if.*

Tantūs, *ā, ūm*, *so great.*

Tārentūm, *ī*, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*

Tardūs, *ā, ūm*, *slow.*

Tarquīniūs, *ī*, *Tarquin, one of the kings of Rome.*

Tectūm (*tegēre*), *ī*, *roof, house.*

Tēgērē, *tex, tect*, *to cover.*

Tempūs, *ōrīs*, *time.*

Tēnērē, *u, t*, *to hold.*

Tentārē, *āv, āt*, *to try, attempt.*

Terrā, *ae*, *the earth.*

Terrērē, *u, it*, *to terrify.*

Tertiūs, *ā, ūm*, *third.*

Tībūr, *ūris*, *Tibur, a town in Italy.*

Tīmērē, *u*, *to fear.*

Timidūs, *ā, ūm*, *timid.*

Tondērē, *tōtōnd*, *tons, to shear, shave.*

Tōtūs, *ā, ūm* (113, R.), *the whole, the entire.*

Tranquillūs, *ā, ūm*, *calm, tranquil.*

Transirē, *ī, it*, *to go over.*

Trēs, *triā*, *three.*

Trojanūs (*Trojā*), *ā, ūm*, *Trojan.*

Tū, *tuī*, *thou.*

Tullia, *ae*, *Tullia, a queen of Rome.*

Turpūs, *ē*, *base, disgraceful.*

Turrīs (*acc., ēm or īm; abl., ē or ī*), *tower.*

Tuūs, *ā, ūm*, *your.*

U.

Ullūs, *ā, ūm* (113, R.), *any.*

Undē, *whence.*

Unquām, *ever.*

Unūs, *ā, ūm* (113, R.), *one, single, single one.*

Urbs, *īa*, *city.*

Ursūs, *ī*, *bear.*

Usquē, *as far as; usquē ād*, *even to.*

U: (conj.), *that, as.*

Uti, *ūs*, *to use.*

Utilis, *ē*, *useful.*

Utilitas (*ūtīlīs*), *ātīs*, *utility, advantage.*

Utinām (*conj.*), *would that.*

Utrūm (*interrog. part.*), *whether: utrūm—ān*, *whether—or.*

Uvā, *ae*, *grape.*

V.

Vācārē, *āv, āt*, *to have leisure for.*

Vēl (*conj.*), *or; vēl—vēl*, *either—or.*

Vellē, *vōlu* (410), *to wish, be willing.*

Vēlox, *ōcis*, *swift.*

Vēnārī, *āt*, *to hunt.*

Vendērē, *did, dīt*, *to sell.*

Vēnirē, *vēn, vent*, *to come.*

Vēr, *vēria*, *n*, *spring.*

Verbūm, *ī*, *word.*

Vērārī, *it*, *to fear.*

Vērō, *indeed, truly.*

Vērūs, *ā, ūm*, *true, real; vērum*, *truth.*

Vēruntāmēn, *but yet.*

Vestēr, *trā, trūm*, *your.*

Vestīs, *īa*, *garment.*

Vētustūs, *ā, ūm*, *ancient.*

Viā, *ae*, *way, road.*

Victimā, *ae*, *victim.*

Victōriā, *ae*, *Victoria.*

Viderē, *vid, vis*, *to see; pass, vīdērī*, *to seem.*

Vigilārē (*vīgīl*), *āv, āt*, *to watch.*

Vigintī, *twenty.*

Vincērē, *vic, vict*, *to conquer.*

Vincirē, *vinx, vinct*, *to bind.*

Vincūllum, *ī*, *chain.*

Vindicārē, *āv, āt*, *to avenge.*

Viōlārē, *āv, āt*, *to violate, wrong, break.*

Vīr, *vīrī*, *man, hero.*

Virgō, *īnīs*, *virgin, maiden.*

Virtūs, ūtis, virtus, manliness.	Vocārē, āv, āt, to call.
Via, vis (acc., vim), pl., virēs, viriūm,	Vōlārē, āv, āt, to fly.
 &c., force, strength.	Vōluptās, ātis, pleasure.
Vitā, ae, life.	Vox, vōcis, voice.
Vitārē, āv, āt, to shun, avoid.	Vulnērārē, āv, āt, to wound
Vitūpērārē, āv, āt, to blame, criticize.	Vulnūs, ōris, wound.
Vivērē, viz, vict, to live.	Vulpēs, is, fox.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

- Ability*, ingēnium, l.
About, dē (with *abl.*).
Above, sup̄rā (adv. and prep. with *acc.*).
Abridgment, ēpitōmē, ēa.
Accept, accip̄rē (iō), cēp, cept (550).
Accomplish, effīc̄rē (iō), fēc, fect.
Accuse, accūsārē, āv, āt.
Achilles, Achillēs, īa.
Acquire, obtin̄rē, tīnu, tent.
Acquit, absolv̄rē, v, ūt.
Act, v., fāc̄rē (iō), fēc, fact.
Admiration, admirātiō, ōnīa.
Admonish, mōn̄rē, u, īt, admōn̄rē, &c.
Adorn, ornārē, āv, āt.
Advance, prōmōv̄rē, mōv, mōt.
Advantage, ūtilitās, ātīa.
Advice, consiliūm, l.
Advise, enāderē, a, s; mōn̄rē, u, īt.
Aeneas, Aenēās, ae.
Affair, rēs, rēi.
After, post (with *acc.*).
Again, iterūm.
Again and again, ētiām atquē ētiām.
Against, īn (*acc.*); contrā (*acc.*).
Aid, a., adjūmentūm, ī; auxiliūm, l.
Aid, v., subv̄nirē, v̄n, vent, adjūvārē, jūv, jūt.
All (as a whole), cunctūs, ā, ūm.
All (every), omnīa, ē.
Alps, Alpēs, ūm.
Also, ētiām, quōquē.
Altar, ārā, ae.
Although, licēt.
Always, semp̄r.
Ambassador, legātūs, l.
American, Amēricānūs, ā, ūm.
- Amphibious animal*, amphibiūm, l.
Ample, ampliūs, ā, ūm.
Anchises, Anchisēs, ae.
Ancient, v̄tustūs, ā, ūm.
And, ēt, quē (*enclitic*), &c.
Anger, irā, ae.
Animal, ānimāl, ālīa.
Announce, nuntiārē, āv, āt (540).
Answer, a., responsūm, l.
Answer, v., respond̄rē, d, a.
Any, ullūs, ā, ūm (118, R.).
Any one, āliquis, ā, quid.
Appearance, fāciēs, ēi.
Appease, plācārē, āv, āt.
Appoint, constituērē, u, ūt.
Approach, a., adventūs, ūs (521).
Approach, v., appropinquārē, āv, āt; accēd̄rē, cess, cesa.
Arm, brāchiūm, l.
Armor-bearer, armiḡr, l.
Army, exercitūs, ūa.
Arouse, excitārē, āv, āt.
Arrange, constituērē, u, ūt.
Arrange, array, instruērē, ūx, ūct.
Arrest, compr̄hend̄rē, d, a.
Arrival, adventūs, ūs (521).
Arrive at, pervēnirē, v̄n, vent.
Arrow, sāgittā, ae.
Art, ars, artīa.
As, ūt.
As far as, usquē.
As if, quāsi, tanquām.
As possible, quām with *superl.* (309).
Ascanius, Ascānīus, l.
Ascertain, cōgnos̄c̄rē, nōv, nīt.
Ask, rōgārē, āv, āt.
Ask advice, cōsūl̄rē, lu, lt.
Ass, asinūs, l.
Assemble, convēnirē, v̄n, vent (550).
Assent, give assent, annuērē, u, ūt.
Assumed appearance, sīmūlatiō, ōnīa.

At a high price, magni; *at a very high price*, maxim.
At a low price, parvi.
At home, domi.
Athenian, Atheniensis, ē.
Athens, Athenae, ārium.
Attack, impētūs, ūa.
Attain, attingere, tīg, tact.
Attempt, tentare, āv, āt.
Audacious, audax, ācia.
Author, auctor, ōria.
Autumn, autumnus, l.
Avarice, avaritia, ae.
Avaricious, āvārius, ā, ūm.
Avenge, vindicare, āv, āt.
Avoid, vitare, āv, āt.

B.

Bad, improbus, ā, ūm; malus, ā, ūm.
Badly, malē.
Bake, coquere, cox, coct.
Balbus, Balbus, l.
Banish, expellere, pūl, pula.
Base, turpis, ē.
Battle, proelium, l.
Be, esse, fu, fūt.
Be able, posse, pōtu.
Be born, nasci, nāt.
Be engaged in, interessē, fu, fūt.
Be ignorant of, nescire, iv (i), it.
Be made, fieri, fact.
Be on one's guard against, cavere, cāv, caut.
Be prejudicial to, obesse, fu, fūt.
Be present, adesse, fu, fūt.
Be quiet, quiescere, quiesv, quiat.
Be silent, tacere, u, it.
Be slave to, servire, iv, it.
Be unwilling, nolle, nōlu.
Be willing, velle, vōlu.
Be wise, sapere, iv or i.
Bear, a, ursus, l.
Bear, v, ferrē, tūl, lat.
Beard, barbā, ae.
Beautiful, pulcher, chrā, chrūm.
Because, quia.
Become, fieri, fact.
Before (adv.), antea.
Before (prep.), ante, corā, prae, pro.
Beg for, sue for, petere, iv (i), it.
Begin to bloom, florescere (544).

Beginning, inceptum, l.
Behold, spectare, āv, āt.
Believe, credere, credid, crēdit.
Below, infra (with acc.).
Benefit, beneficium, l.
Between, inter (with acc.).
Bind, vincire, vinx, vinct.
Bird, avis, is, f.
Bite, mordere, mōmord, mora.
Blame, a, culpa, ae.
Blame, v, vituperare, āv, āt.
Blind, caecus, ā, ūm.
Blood, sanguis, inis, m.
Bloom, florere, u.
Body, corpus, ōria.
Book, liber, libri.
Booty, praeda.
Bosom, sinus, ūa.
Both—and, et—et; quā n—tūc.
Boy, puer, l.
Brave, fortis, ē.
Bravely, fortiter.
Break, frangere, frēg, fract; rum-
 pere, rūp, rupt; violare, āv, āt:
break one's word, fidem violare.
Bribery, ambitus, ūa.
Bridge, pons, tis, m.
Bring, bring to, afferre, attul, allat.
Bring water, aquari, āt.
Brother, frater, tris.
Brutus, Brutus, l.
Build, aedificare, āv, āt; construere,
 x, ct; condere, did, dit.
Building, aedificium, l.
Burn, incendere, d, a.
Bury, sepelire, iv (i), pult.
But, sed, āt, autē.
But, now (in reasoning), atqui.
But, but yet, attamen, veruntamen.
But that, quin.
Buy, emere, em, empt.
By (with voluntary agent), a, ab, abq;
 in other cases indicated by ab.

C.

Caesar, Caesar, āria.
Caius, Caius, l.
Calamity, calamitas, atia.
Call, vocare, āv, āt.
Call to mind, recordari, st.
Calm, tranquillus, ā, ūm.

Camp, castrā, ōrūm.
Captive, captīvūs, i.
Card, carpērē, ps, pt.
Carry, ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Carry on (as war), gērērē, gess, gest.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inīs.
Carthaginian, Carthāginiensis, ē.
Catch, dēprēhendērē, d, a.
Cautious, prūdēns, tīs; prōvīdūs, ā, ūm.
Cavalry, equitātūs, ūs.
Cave, antrūm, i.
Celebrated, cēlēbēr, brīs, brē.
Censure, vitūpērārē, āv, āt.
Certain, certūs, ā, ūm.
Chain, vincūlūm, i; cātēnā, ae.
Change, mūtārē, āv, āt.
Chariot, currūs, ūs.
Chastise, castigārē, āv, āt.
Chief, princeps, cipīs.
Children, libērī, ōrūm.
Choices, optiō, ōnīs.
Christian, Christianūs, i.
Cicero, Cicērō, ōnīs.
Citadel, arx, arcīs.
Citizen, civīs, iā.
City, urbs, urbīs.
Civil, civilīs, ē (528).
Clemency, clēmētiā, ae.
Cloak, palliūm, i.
Cloud, nūbēs, iā.
Cold, frigūs, ōrīs.
Collect, compārārē, āv, āt.
Color, cōlōr, ōrīs.
Come, vērērē, vēr, vent.
Come together, convērērē, vēr, vent.
Command, v., impērārē, āv, āt.
Commands, a., impērātā, ōrūm.
Commander, impērātōr, ōrīs (521).
Compel, compellērē, pūl, puls.
Conceal, occultārē, āv, āt.
Concerning, dē (with abl.).
Condemn, damnārē, āv, āt.
Condition, conditiō, ōnīs.
Conference, collōquiūm, i.
Confine, continērē, tīnu, tent.
Confirm, sancirē, sanx, sanct.
Conquer, sūpērārē, āv, āt; vincērē, vic, vict; dēvincērē, vic, vict.
Construct, construērē, x, ct.
Consul, consūl, ūlīs.
Consult, consūlērē, lu, lt.

Contend, concertārē, āv, āt.
Contented, contentūs, ā, ūm.
Contest, certāmēn, inīs.
Convert, convertērē, t, a.
Cook, cōquērē, cox, coct.
Correct, corrigērē, rex, rect.
Corrupt, corrupērē, rūp, rupt.
Council, conciliūm, i.
Country, rūs, rūris.
Cover, tēgērē, tex, tect.
Cowardly, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.
Crime, flagitiūm, i.
Criminal, reūs, i.
Criticise, vitūpērārē, āv, āt.
Crown, a., cōrōnā, ae.
Crown, crown with a garland, cōrōnā cingērē, nx, nct.
Cry out, exclāmārē, āv, āt.
Cultivate, cōlērē, cōlu, cult.
Cure, sārārē āv, āt.

D.

Dance, saltārē, āv, āt.
Dangerous, pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm.
Daring, audax, ācīs.
Daughter, filiā, ae.
Day, diēs, ēī.
Death, mors, tīs.
Deceive, dēcipērē (iō), cēp, cept.
Deceptive, fallax, ācīs.
Decide, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Declare, indicērē, dix, dict; *declare war*, bellūm indicērē.
Decree, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Defend, dēfendērē, d, a.
Defile, angustiae, ārūm.
Defraud, fraudārē, āv, āt.
Delightful, jūcundūs, ā, ūm.
Demand, poscērē, pōposc; postūlārē āv, āt.
Demonstrate, dēmonstrare, āv, āt.
Depart, abirē, i, it.
Deprive, prīvārē, āv, āt.
Derive, have, hābērē, u, it.
Desire, a., cūpīditās, ātīs.
Desire, v., cūpērē (iō), iv or i, it.
Desirous of, cūpīdūs, ā, ūm.
Despoil, spōliārē, āv, āt.
Destroy, dēlērē, ēv, ēt.
Destruction, pernīciēs, ēī.
Detor, dētērrērē, u, it.

Dido, Diō, ōnia.
Difficult, difficilis, ē.
Diligence, diligentia, ae.
Diligent, diligens, tia.
Direct, order, iuberē, juss, juss.
Discharge, fungi, funct.
Discourse, sermō, ōnia.
Discover, conspicerē (iō), spex, spect.
Disgraceful, turpis, ē.
Dismiss, dimittērē, mīa, miss.
Disregard, negligērē, lex, lect.
Distance, intervallū, l.
Divide, dividerē, via, via.
Divine, divinus, ā, ūm.
Divitiacus, Divitiāci, l.
Do, facērē (iō), fec, fact.
Do good to, prōdesse, prōfu, prōfūt.
Do wrong, peccārē, āv, āt.
Dog, cānia, ia.
Doubt, dubitārē, āv, āt.
Dove, cōlumbā, ae.
Drink, bibērē, bib, bibīt.
Drive, āgērē, ēg, act; compellērē, pūl, pul.
During, inter (with acc.).
Duty, officiū, l.
Dwell, hābitārē, āv, āt.

E.

Eagle, aquilā, ae.
Earth, terrā, ae.
Easy, facilis, ē.
Eat, edērē, ed, ēa.
Edifice, aedificiū, l.
Effect, efficērē (iō), fec, fact.
Eight, octō.
Either—or, aut—aut.
Elegance, elegantia, ae.
Elephant, elephās, antia.
Enact, sancirē, x, ct.
End, finis, is, m. and f.
Endued with, praeditus, ā, ūm.
Endure, sustinērē, tinu, tent; ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Enemy, hostis, is, c.
Engage (as battle), committērē, mīa, miss; *engage battle*, proeliū com-mittērē.
Enjoy, frui, fruct (fruit).
Enlighten, illustrārē, āv, āt.
Enough, sātis.

Entire, tōtū, ā, ūm 113, R.).
Entreat, rogārē, āv, āt.
Enumerate, enūmērārē, āv, āt.
Envy, invidērē, vid, via.
Epistle, epistolā, ae; *literae*, arūm.
Equity, aequitas, atia.
Err, errārē, āv, āt.
Estate, fundus, l.
Eternal, sempiternus, ā, ūm.
Even, etiam.
Even to, usque ad.
Ever, unquam.
Every, omnia, e.
Evil, malū, l.
Excellent, praestans, is.
Excessive, nimius, ā, ūm.
Excite, excitārē, āv, āt.
Exclaim, exclamārē, āv, āt.
Exercise, exercērē, u, it.
Expect, expectārē, āv, āt.
Expel, expellērē, pūl, pula.
Expense, sumptus, ūa.
Explain, expōnērē, pōsu, pōsit.
Eye, oculū, l.

F.

Fabulous, fabulosus, ā, ūm.
Face, faciēs, ei.
Faith, fides, ei.
Faithful, fidelis, ē.
Faithfulness, pietas, atia.
Fall, cadērē, cecid, cas; occidērē, cid, cas.
False, fallax, acis (535).
Falsehood, mendaciū, l.
Farm, fundus, l.
Father, pater, patris.
Fault, culpa, ae.
Faustulus, Faustulus, l.
Favor, a, gratia, ae.
Favor, v., fāverē, fāv, faul.
Fear, a, metus, ūa.
Fear, v., timērē, u; metuērē, u, āt
 vēreri, it.
Fear greatly, pertimescērē, u.
Feast, coena, ae.
Feel (as pain, &c.), sentirē.
Feeling, sensus, ūa.
Few, pauci, ae, ā.
Fidelity, fides, ei.
Field, āger, āgri.

Fifth, quintūs, ā, ūm.
Fight, pugnārē, āv, āt.
Figure, figurā, ae.
Fill, complērē, ēv, ēt.
Find, invēnirē, vēn, vent; rēpērirē, rēpēr, rēpert.
Fine, beautiful, pulchēr, chrā, chrūm.
Finish, finirē, iv, it (540).
Fire, ignis, is, m.
Firm, firmūs, ā, ūm.
Firmness, stābilitās, atia.
First, primūs, ā, ūm.
Fish, piscis, is, m.
Five, quinquē.
Flatterer, ādulātōr, ōris.
Flattery, ādulatiō, ōnis.
Flay, dēglūbērē, ps, pt.
Flee, fugērē (iō), fug, fugit.
Flee for refuge, confūgērē (iō), fug.
Flee from, evōlārē, āv, āt.
Flight, fugā, ae.
Flock, grex, grēgia, m.
Flourish, florērē, u.
Flow, fluērē, x, x.
Flower, flōs, ōris.
Fly, volārē, āv, āt.
Fly away, evōlārē, āv, āt.
Following, postērā, ūm (masc. nom. not used).
Folly, stultitiā, ae.
Food, cibūs, l.
Foot, pēs, pēdis.
For (conj.), enī, nām, namquē.
For (prep.), prō (with abl.).
For ever, perpētūo.
Forage, pābulārī, āt.
Force, mānūs, ūs vīa, vīs (pl. vīrēs).
Force, cōpiāe, ārūm.
Forget, oblivisci, oblīt.
Formerly, ōlim.
Fortune, fortunā, ae.
Found, condērē, did, dīt (550).
Four, quātuōr.
Fourth, quartūs, ā, ūm.
Fox, vulpēs, is.
Free, libēr, ā, ūm.
Frequent, crēbēr, brā, brūm.
Friend, amicus, i.
Friendship, amicitia, ae.
Brighten, terrērē, u, it.

From, ā, āb, abe, dē, ex, and sometimes before participial nouns, quōminūs.
Fulfil, fungi, funct.
Furnish, praeberē, u, it.
Further, ampliūs.
Future, futūrūs, ā, ūm.

G.

Gallic, Gallicūs, ā, ūm.
Game, ludūs, l.
Garden, hortūs, l.
Garland, cōrōnā, ae.
Garment, vestis, is.
Gate, portā, ae.
Gather, carpērē, ps, pt.
Gaul, a Gaul, Gallūs, l.
Germany, Germaniā, ae.
Get possession of, pōtirī, it.
Gift, dōnūm, l.
Girl, puellā, ae.
Give, dārē, dēd, dāt; dōnārē, āv, āt.
Glitter, micārē, u.
Glory, glōriā, ae.
Go, irē, iv or i, it.
Go away, ābirē, i, it.
Go over, transirē, i, it; supērārē, āv, āt.
Gold, aurūm, l.
Golden, aureūs, ā, ūm.
Good, bōnūs, ā, ūm.
Govern, rēgērē, rex, rect.
Government, rēgnūm, l.
Grain, grānūm, l.
Grape, ūvā, ae.
Gratitude, grātiā, ae.
Great, magnūs, ā, ūm; at a great price, magni; it is a great thing, magnū est.
Greater, majōr, ūs.
Greatest, highest, summūs, ā, ūm.
Greatest, very great, maximūs, ā, ūm; at a very great price, maximī.
Greatness, magnitūdō, inis.
Greeks, Graeci, ōrūm.
Grief, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.
Grieve, dōlērē, u, it; lūgērē, lux.
Grove, lūcūs, l.
Guard, custōdirē, iv, it (540).
Guide, dux, dūcia.

H.

Hand, mánus, ūa.
Hang, pendere, pepend.
Hannibal, Hannibál, álla.
Happily, beatē.
Happiness, felicitás, atis.
Happy, beatūs, ā, ūm.
Harmless, innoxius, ā, ūm.
Hatred, odiūm, i.
Have, habere, u, it.
Hawk, accipitēs, tris.
He himself, ipse, ā, ūm.
He, she, it, illē, ā, ūd.
He, she, or it is, est.
Head, caput, itis.
Hear, audire, iv, it.
Heart, cor, cordis, n.
Heat, ignis, is, m.
Heaven, the heavens, coelūm, i.
Heavy, gravis, ē.
Help, a., adiumentūm, i.
Help, v., adjuvare, jūv, jūt.
Herd, grex, gregis, m.
Hero, vir, viri; hērōa, ōis.
Hide, occultare, av, at.
High, altus, ā, ūm.
Highest, summus, ā, ūm.
Hinder, impedire, iv (i), it.
His, her, its, &c., suus, ā, ūm.
History, hīstōriā, ae.
Hold, tenere, u, tent.
Home, domus, ūs or i, f.
Honest, probus, ā, ūm.
Honey, mel, mellis.
Honor, honor, ōris.
Hope, a., spes, el.
Hope, hope for, sperare, av, at.
Horse, equus, i.
Horseman, eques, itis.
Hostage, obses, idis.
House, tectum, i; domus, ūs or i, f.
How, quā; *how many*, quā multi.
How great, quantus, ā, ūm; *how much*, quantum (*with gen.*).
However, however much, quamvis.
Human, humanus, ā, ūm.
Hunger, fames, is.
Hunt, venari, at.
Hurt, nocere, u, it.
Husband, conjux, ūgis.
Husbandman, agricola, ae.

I.

I, ego, mei.
If, si, dummodo.
Ignorance, ignorantia, ōnis.
Ignorant, ignarus, ā, ūm.
Illuminate, illustrare, av, at.
Immediately, statim.
Immense, immensus, ā, ūm.
Immortal, immortalis, ē.
Immovable, immobilis, ē.
Impede, impedire, iv (i), it.
Impious, impius, ā, ūm.
Imprudent, imprudens, tis.
In, in (*with abl.*).
In all, omnino.
In comparison with, prae.
In order that, quō.
In person, in presence of, coram.
In the mean time, interim.
In such a manner, adeo.
Inclined to, propensus, ā, ūm.
Increase, augere, aux, auct; crescere, crev, cret.
Incredible, incredibilis, ē (534).
Indeed, enim, verō.
Indolent, ignavus, ā, ūm.
Indulge, indulgere, la, it.
Industry, industria, ae.
Inflict, infligere, x, ct.
Inhabit, habitare, av, at.
Inhabitant, incolā, ae, (560).
Injury, injuria, ae.
Innocent, innocens, tis.
Instruct, erudire, iv, it.
Instruction, consilium, i: praeceptum, i.
Into, in (*with acc.*).
Invade, invadere, vas, vas, (550).
Invite, call, vocare, av, at.
Iron, ferrum, i.
Irritate, irritare, av, at.
It behooves, oportet.
It is better, praestat.
It is well known, is an admitted fact, constat.
It is lawful, licet.
It pities, one pities, miseret.
It repents, one repents, poenitet.
Italy, Italia, ae.

J.

Journey, itēr, itinēris, n.
Judge, s., iūdex, icia.
Judge, v., iūdicārē, av, at.
Just, iustūs, ā, ūm.
Just as, sicut.
Justice, sequitās, atia.

K.

Keep, servārē, av, at.
Kid, hādūs, l.
Kill, occidērē, cid, cis; interficērē (iō), fēc, fect.
Kind, sort, s., gēnūs, ēris.
Kind, a., bēnignūs, ā, ūm.
King, rex, rēgia.
Kingdom, rēgnūm, l.
Know, scīrē, sciv, scit.
Knowledge, scientiā, ae.
Known, cōgnitūs, ā, ūm.

L.

Labor, s., lābōr, ōris.
Labor, v., lābōrārē, av, at.
Lamb, agnūs, l.
Large, magnūs, ā, ūm; amplūs, ā, ūm.
Larger, maior, ūs.
Last, dūrārē, av, at.
Lasting, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.
Latinus, Lātīnūs, l.
Laugh, laugh at, ridērē, ris, ris.
Lavinia, Lāvinia, ae.
Law, lex, legia.
Lead, dūcērē, dux, duct; āgērē, ēg, act.
Lead back, rēdūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead forth, edūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead forward or out, prōdūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead to, addūcērē, dux, duct.
Leader, dux, dūcia.
Learn, discērē, didic.
Legion, lēgiō, ōnis.
Letter, literæ, ārūm: ēpistōlā, ae.
Levy, comparārē, av, at.
Lie, a falsehood, mendāciūm, l.
Life, vitā, ae.
Light, lux, lūcia.

Line of battle, acies, el.
Lion, leō, ōnis.
Listen to, audirē, iv, it.
Little, parvūs, ā, ūm; a little, parvūm: paucūs, ā, ūm.
Little garden, hortulūs, l (515).
Live, vivērē, viz, vict.
Lofty, altūs, ā, ūm.
Look at, spectārē, av, at.
Loose, amittērē, mis, missa.
Love, amārē, av, at.

M.

Maiden, virgō, inis.
Make, faciērē (iō), fēc, fact: make a reply, responsū dārē.
Man, hōmō, inis: vir, l.
Manliness, virtūs, ūtis.
Many, multūs, ā, ūm; many things, multā.
March, prōficisci, fect.
Marine, of the sea, mārīnūs, ā, ūm.
Master as teacher, māgister, trī.
Master as owner, dōminūs, l.
Matron, mātṛonā, ae.
Meadow, prātūm, l.
Meanwhile, intērīm.
Meeting, conciliūm, l.
Melt, liquescērē, licu.
Merciful, clēmēns, tis: lenis, ē.
Messenger, nuntiūs, l.
Middle, midst of, middle of, mēdiūm, ā, ūm, (267.)
Mild, lenis, ē: clēmēns, tis.
Mildness, clēmēntiā, ae.
Military service, militiā, ae.
Mind, animūs, l; mind, the reasoning faculty, mens, tis.
Miserable, miser, ā, ūm.
Misfortune, cālāmitās, atis: mālūm, l.
Mislead, corrupērē, rūp, rupt.
Modesty, pūdōr, ōris.
Money, pecūniā, ae.
Month, mensis, is, m.
Moon, lūnā, ae.
More, ampliūs, (adv.).
Mortal, mortālīs, ē.
Mother, mātēr, tris.
Mountain, mons, tis, m.
Mourn, wear mourning for, lōgārē, x, ct.

Movable, mōbīlis, ā.
Move, mōvērē, mōv, mōt.
Move forward, prōmōvērē, mōv, mōt.
Much, multū, ā, ūm; *much good*,
 multūm boni; *much time*, mul-
 tūm temporis.
Multitude, multītūdō, īnis.
My, meū, ā, ūm.

N.

Name, nōmēn, īnis.
Narrate, narrārē, āv, āt.
Narration, narratīve, narratīō, ōnis,
 (521.)
Narrow pass, angustia, arūm.
Nation, natiō, ōnis.
Native country, patriā, ae.
Natural to man, hūmānū, ā, ūm.
Nature, gēnū, ēris.
Nearer, prōpiōr, ūa.
Neither, nec; *neither—nor*, nec—
 nec.
Nest, nidū, ī.
Never, nunquā.
Next, nearest, proximū, ā, ūm;
next following, postērā, ūm (*masc.*
nom. not used).
Night, nox, noctis.
Nightingale, lusciniā, ae.
No, no one (*adj.*), nullū, ā, ūm
 (113, R.).
No one, nobody, (*sub.*), nēmō, (īnis).
Not, nōn; *with imperat. or subj.*, nē;
not only—but also, nōn solū—
 sed etiā.
Not even, nequidēm.
Not to know, nescirē, īv, īt.
Not yet, nondū.
Nothing, nihil (*indec.*).
November, Nōvembēr, brīs (*abl. ī.*),
 Numa, Nūmā, ae.
Number, s, nūmērū, ī.
Number, v, nūmērārē, āv, āt.

O.

O, O.
O if, o sī.
Obey, pārērē, u, īt.
Observe, servārē, āv, āt.
Obtain, obtinērē, u, tent.

Occasion, occasiō, ōnis.
Of himself, sui.
Of yesterday, hesternū, ā, ūm.
Offend against, violārē, āv, āt.
Offer, praeberē, u, īt.
Often, saepe.
Old age, senectū, utis.
Old man, senex, senia.
On service, militiae.
On this side, cis.
One, single one, unus, ā, ūm (113, R.).
One is grieved at, pigēt; *I am grieved*
 at, mē pigēt.
One ought, oportēt.
Only, mōdō.
Open, apērērē, u, t.
Openly, corām.
Opportunity, occasiō, ōnis.
Oppose, obstārē, stit, stat.
Or, aut, vel; either—or, vel—vel.
Or, in double questions, an.
Oration, oratīō, ōnis.
Orator, oratōr, ōris.
Order, juberē, juss, juss.
Other, aliū, ā, ūd (113, R.).
Our, nostrē, trā, trūm.
Overhang, impendērē.
Overthrow, evertērē, rt, ra.

P.

Pain, dōlōr, ōris.
Pardon, ignoscērē, nōv, nōt.
Parent, parens, entis.
Part, pars, tis.
Pass over in silence, tacerē, u, īt.
Passion, cupiditas, atis.
Past, praeteritū, ā, ūm; *the past*,
 praeteritū.
Pausanias, Pausaniās, ae.
Peace, pax, cis.
Peacock, pavō, ōnis.
People, pōpulus, ī.
Perceive, sentirē, s, s; *perpicere*
 (iō), spex, spect.
Perception, sensus, ūa.
Perfidy, perfidiā, ae.
Personal, privātū, ā, ūm.
Persuade, persuaderē, s, a.
Philosopher, philosophū, ī.
Physician, medicus, ī.
Pity, pietās, atis.

Pious, piŭs, ā, ūm.
Pity, misērii, it.
Place, s., lŏsus, l. (pl. l, or ā.)
Place, v., pŏnērē, pŭsu, pŏait.
Plainly, planē.
Plausible, spēciosŭs, ā, ūm.
Play, s., ludŭs, l.
Play, v., ludērē, a. a.
Pleasant, iŭcundŭs, ā, ūm.
Please, placērē, u, it.
Pleasure, vŏluptās, ātis.
Plough, ārārē, āv, āt.
Pluck, carpērē, ps, pt.
Plunge into, immergērē, ra, ra.
Poem, poēmā, ātis.
Poet, poētā, ae.
Poor man, paupēr, ēria.
Popular, pŏpŭlāris, ē (528).
Possess, possidērē, ed, esa.
Practice, cŏlērē, u, cult; exercērē, u, it.
Praise, s., laus, dia.
Praise, v., laudārē, āv, āt.
Precept, praeceptŭm, l.
Prefer, mallē, malŭ.
Prepare, pārārē, āv, āt; praepārārē.
Present (adj.), praesens, tis.
Present, to make a present, dŏnārē, āv, āt.
Preserve, conservārē, āv, āt.
Pretext, simulatiŭ, ōnia.
Prevent, deterrērē, u, it; obstārē, sŭit, stāt.
Priest, priestess, sacerdos, ōtia.
Private, privātŭs, ā, ūm.
Prize, aestimārē, āv, āt; prize highly, māgni aestimārē.
Procure, compārārē, āv, āt.
Profit, prŏdessē, prŏfu, prŏfŭt.
Promise, prŏmittērē, mŭs, miss.
Provided, dummodŏ.
Province, prŏvincia, ae.
Prudent, prŭdentiā, ae.
Prudent, prŭdens, tis; prŏvidŭs, ā, ūm.
Pull down, ēvertērē, t, a.
Punish, pŭnirē, iv, it.
Pupil, discipŭlus, l.
Purchase, ēmērē, ēm, empt.
Put confidence in, crēdērē, crēdid, crēdit.
Put to flight, fŭgārē, āv, āt, (540).

Q

Quarrel, concertārē, āv, āt.
Queen, rēginā, ae.
Question, quaestiŭ, ōnia.
Quickly, cēlērītēr.

R

Rage, saevirē, iv, it.
Raise, compārārē, āv, āt.
Reach, attingērē, tŭg, tact; pervēnirē, vēn, vent.
Read, lēgērē, lēg, lect.
Real, vērŭs, ā, ūm.
Reason, rātiŭ, ōnia.
Receive, accipērē (iŭ), cēp, cept; rēcipērē (iŭ); cāpērē (iŭ), cēp, capt.
Reform, sārārē, āv, āt.
Refuge, perfŭgiŭm, l.
Regard, pŭtārē, āv, āt.
Reign, rēgnārē, āv, āt.
Reject, respuērē, pu.
Relate, narrārē, āv, āt; rēferrē, tŭl, lat.
Relying on, frētŭs, ā, ūm.
Remain, mārērē, mans, mans.
Remaining, rēliquŭs, ā, ūm.
Remember, rēcŏrdārē, i.
Render thanks, grātias āgērē.
Repent, one repents, poenitēt (435).
Report, s., rŭmŏr, ōria.
Report, nuntiārē, āv, āt.
Repress, compescērē, cu.
Resist, rēsistērē, stit, stit.
Response, responsŭm, l.
Rest, the rest, rēliquŭs, ā, ūm.
Rest, quiescērē, quēv, quiet.
Restrain, continērē, u, tent; compescērē, cu.
Return, rēdirē, i, it; rēvertērē, t, a (551).
Rhine, Rhēnŭs, l.
Rich, lŏcuplēs, ētŭs.
Ring, anŭlŭs, l.
Ripen, cŏquērē, cox, coct.
River, flŭmēn, inŭs.
Road, viā, ae.
Rob of, spŏliārē, āv, āt.
Robust, rŏbustŭs, ā, ūm.
Roman, Rŏmānŭs, ā, ūm.
Rome, Rŏmā, ae.

Romulus, Römülüs, l.
Roof, tectüm, l.
Round, rötundüs, ä, üm.
Rule, rëgërë, rex, rect.
Rumor, rümör, öria.
Run, currërë, cücurr, cura.
Rush, ruërë, ru, rüt.

S.

Safe, incölümis, ä.
Safety, säüsa, ütia.
Same, idëm, eädëm, idëm.
Satisfy, sätiärë, äv, ät.
Save, servärë, äv, ät.
Say, dicërë, dix, dict.
Scatter, spargërë, spars, spars.
Sceptre, scepstrüm, l.
Scipio, Scipiö, onia.
Sea, märe, ia.
Second, säcundüs, ä, üm.
See, vidërë, vid, vis; conspiciërë (iö), spex, spect.
Seed, sämën, inia.
Seek, pëtärë, IV or I, it.
Seem, vidëri, via.
Seize, arripërë (iö), ipu, ept; dëprë-hendërë, hend, hena.
Self, ipëë, ä, üm.
Sell, vendërë, did, dît.
Senate, sënätüs, üs, (517.)
Senator, sënätör, öria.
Send, mittërë, mis, missa.
Send before, praemittërë, mis, missa.
Sentiment, sententiä, ae.
Separate, disjungërë, x, ct.
Serve, servirë, IV (i), it.
Servius, Serviüs, l.
Set forth, expönërë, pösu, pöëft.
Set on fire, incendërë, d, a.
Set out, pröfiscit, fect.
Severe, äcër, äcria, äcrë.
Sew, stich, suërë, su, sût.
Shame, püdör, öria.
Sharp, äcër, äcria, äcrë.
Shave, tondërë, tötond, tons.
Shear, tondërë, tötond, tons.
Sheep, övis, ia.
Shepherd, pastör, öria. (520.)
Shield, clipeüs, l.
Shine, micärë, u; licërë, x.
Shining, splendens, tia.

Short, brëvis, ä.
Shoulder, hümërüs, l.
Show, monsträrë, äv, ät; demonsträrë, äv, ät.
Shrub, frütex, icia, m.
Shun, vitärë, äv, ät.
Shut, claudërë, s, a.
Silver, argentüm, l.
Simple, simplex, icia.
Sin, peccärë, äv, ät.
Since, cüm, quüm.
Sing, cänërë, cëcin, cant; cantärë, äv, ät.
Single, single one, ünüs, ä, üm (118, R.).
Siren, eirën, ënia.
Sister, sörör, öria.
Six, sex.
Size, magnitüdä, inis.
Skilful, skilled in, përtüs, ä, üm.
Skin, dëglübërë, ps, pt.
Slave, servüs, l.
Sleep, s., somnüs, l.
Sleep, dormirë, IV; it.
Slow, tardüs, ä, üm.
Small, parvüs, ä, üm.
Smaller, minör, üs.
Snake, anguis, ia, m.
Snatch, arripërë (iö), ipu, ept.
Snow, nix, nivis.
So, sic, ädeo, täm; so—as, täm—quäm, sicüt.
So great, tantüs, ä, üm.
Socrates, Söcrätës, ia.
Soldier, milës, itis.
Some, äliquis, quä, quid (quöd); some time, äliquid tempöris.
Some time, some time or other, äli-quandä.
Sometimes, intërim.
Son, filiüs, l.
Son-in-law, gënër, l.
Sorrow, dölör, öria; luctüs, üs.
Soul, änimüs, l.
Sound, sönüs, l.
Sow, spargërë, rs, ra.
Space, intervallüm, l.
Spare, parcërë, pëperc (pars), paräli (pars).
Speak, löqui, locütüs.
Spear, hastä, ae.
Specious, spëciösüs, ä, üm (550).

Spin, *nērē*, *nēv*, *nēt*.
Sport, *lūdus*, *I*.
Spouse, *conjux*, *gis*.
Spring, *vēr*, *veris*, *n*.
Sprinkle, *aspergērē*, *ra*, *ra*.
Stability, *stabilitās*, *ātis*.
Stain, *maculārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Star, *stellā*, *ae*.
State, *civitas*, *ātis*.
Storm, *expugnārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Stream, *flūmēn*, *inis*.
Strength, *vis*, *vis* (*pl.*, *virēs*).
Strive for, *stūdērē*, *u*.
Strong, *rōbustūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Studious, *stūdiōsus*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Study, *stūdērē*, *u*.
Successive, *continūus*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Succor, *succurrērē*, *rr*, *ra*.
Sue for, *pētērē*, *iv* (*i*), *it*.
Sulla, *Sullā*, *ae*.
Summer, *aestas*, *ātis*.
Sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, *m*.
Supper, *coenā*, *ae*.
Supplicate, *exorārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Surface, *sūperficiēs*, *ēl*.
Surpass, *sūpērārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Surrender, *cedērē*, *did*, *dīt*.
Surround, *circumdārē*, *dēd*, *dāt*; *cin-*
gērē, *x*, *ct*.
Sustain, *sustinērē*, *u*, *tent*.
Swear, *jūrārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Swift, *velox*, *ociās*.
Swim, *nārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Sword, *glādius*, *I*.

T.

Take, *cāpērē* (*hō*), *cep*, *capt*.
Tak : *care*, *cāvērē*, *cāv*, *caut*.
Take care of, *cūrārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Take by storm, *expugnārē*, *av*, *āt*
 (550).
Talent, *ingēniūm*, *I*.
Tarentum, *Tārentūm*, *I*.
Tarquin, *Tarquinius*, *I*.
Teach, *dōcērē*, *u*, *doct*.
Tear in pieces, *dilāniārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Ten, *dēcēm*.
Tenth, *dēcimūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Terms, *conditiō*, *ōnis*.
Terrify, *terrērē*, *u*, *it*.
Than, *quām*.
Thanks, *grātiās*, *arūm*.

Thanksgiving, *supplicatiō*, *ōnis*.
That (*pron.*), *illē*, *ā*, *ūd*; *is*, *eā*, *id-*
istē, *ā*, *ūd*.
That (*conj.*), *ūt*, *with comp.* (469)
quō.
That not, *quōmōdō*, *quān*.
The entire, *tōtūs*, *ā*, *ūm* (118, R.).
Theft, *furtūm*, *I*.
There, *ibi*.
Therefore, *ergō*, *itāquē*, *idēō*, *igitūr*.
Thing, *rēs*, *rēi*.
Think, *pūtārē*, *av*, *āt*; *think about*,
cōgitārē, *av*, *āt*; *think little of*
parvi aestimārē, *av*, *āt*.
Third, *tertius*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Thirst, *sītūrē*, *iv*, *it*.
This, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*.
Thou, *you*, *tū*, *tui*.
Thousand, *millē*.
Threaten, *impendērē*.
Three, *trēs*, *triā*.
Through, *pēr*.
Tibur, *Tibūr*, *ūris*.
Till, *cōlērē*, *u*, *cult*.
Time, *tempūs*, *ōris*.
Timid, *timidūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.
To, *ad*, *in* (*with acc.*).
To death, *cāpitā*.
Too much, *nimiūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Top, the top, *summūs*, *ā*, *ūm*; *agree-*
ing with the noun, *as*, *summūs*
mons, *the top of the mountain*.
Torture, *excruciārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Touch, *tangērē*, *tētig*, *tact*.
Towards, *ergā* (*with acc.*).
Tower, *arx*, *cis*; *turris*, *is* (*acc.*, *ēm*
or im, *abl.* *ē* or *l*).
Traitor, *prōdītōr*, *ōris*.
Tranquil, *tranquillus*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Treachery, *treason*, *prōditiō*, *ōnis*.
Treaty, *foedūs*, *ēris*.
Tree, *arbōr*, *ōris*, *f*.
Trojan, *Trojanūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.
True, *vērūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Truly, *vērē*.
Truth, *vērūm*, *I*.
Try, *tentārē*, *av*, *āt*.
Tullia, *Tullia*, *ae*.
Turn, *convert*, *convertērē*, *t*, *a*.
Turn back, *rēvertērē*, *t*, *a*.
Twelve, *duōdēcim*.
Twenty, *viginti*.

Two, duō, duae, duō.
 Two hundred, dūcenti, ae, ā.
 Two years, space of two years, bien-
 nium.

U.

Uncertain, incertū, ā, ūm (550).
 Uncover, āpērire, ru, rt.
 Understand, intelligere, lex, lect.
 Uninjured, incolūmīa, ā.
 Unknown, incognitū, ā, ūm.
 Unlearned, indoctū, ā, ūm.
 Unnecessary, supervacū, ā, ūm.
 Unwilling, invitū, ā, ūm.
 Unworthy, indignū, ā, ūm.
 Use, v., ūti, ūa.
 Useful, ūtilis, ā.
 Useless, inūtilis, ā.
 Utility, ūtilitas, ātia.

V.

Valuable, pretiōsū, ā, ūm.
 Value, aestimāre, āv, āt.
 Very (before a noun or pronoun,
 sometimes), ipse, ā, ūm.
 Very fond, studiōsū, a, um.
 Very much or great, plurimū, ā,
 ūm; very many, plurimī.
 Victim, victimā, ae.
 Victoria, Victoriā, ae (prop. name).
 Victory, victoriā, ae.
 Violate, violāre, āv, āt; rumpere,
 rūp, rupt.
 Virgin, virgē, inia.
 Virtue, virtū, ūtia.
 Voice, vox, vōcia.

W.

Wage (as war), gēre, gess, gest;
 inferre, tūl, lat.
 Walk, ambulare, āv, āt.
 Wall, murū, l.
 War, bellū, l.
 Warn, admōnere, u, it.
 Wash, lavare, lav, laut, and lavat.
 Wasp, crābrē, ōnia.
 Waste, perdere, did, dit.
 Watch, vigilare, āv, āt.
 Water, aquā, ae.
 Wax (as moon), crescere, crev, crēt.
 Way, viā, ae; iter, itinēria, n.

Wealthy, locuplēs, ātia.
 Weep, flere, ēv, ēt.
 Weep for, lūgere, lux.
 Well, bene.
 When, quūm.
 Whence, undē.
 Wherefore, quārē.
 Whether, utrūm; whether—or, in
 double questions, utrūm—ān, in
 other cases, seu—seu; sive—sive.
 While, dūm; while walking, intēr
 ambulandūm.
 White, candidū, ā, ūm.
 Who, which, that (rel.), quī, quae,
 quōd.
 Who, which, what? (interrog.), quīs,
 quae, quid? (subs.); quī, quae,
 quōd? (adj.).
 Whole, tōtū, ā, ūm (113, R.).
 Wicked, imprōbū, ā, ūm.
 Wife, conjux, gia.
 Winter, hiema, ia.
 Wisdom, sapiētiā, ae.
 Wise, sapiens, tia.
 Wish, vellē, vōlu.
 With, cūm.
 Within, intrā (with acc.).
 Without, sinē (with abl.).
 Witness, spectāre, āv, āt (543).
 Wolf, lūpū, l.
 Woman, mulier, ia.
 Wonderful, mirabilis, ā.
 Wool, lanā, ae.
 Word, verbū, l.
 Work, opū, ēria.
 World, mundū, l; orbis terrarū.
 Worthy, dignū, ā, ūm.
 Would that, ūtinām, o sī.
 Wound, z, vulnū, ēria.
 Wound, v., vulnerare, āv, āt.
 Wretched, miser, ā, ūm.
 Write, scribere, ps, pt.
 Wrong, v., violare, āv, āt.

Y.

Year, annū, l.
 Yesterday, hesternō diē.
 Yet, tamen.
 You, tū, tuī.
 Your, thy, tuū, ā, ūm; your, vestrē,
 trā, trūm.

SERIES OF READING BOOKS.

BY HENRY MANDEVILLE, D. D.

COMPRISING

PRIMARY READING BOOK.	1 vol. 16mo.	Price, \$0 10
SECOND READER.	1 vol. 16mo.	17
THIRD READER.	1 vol. 16mo.	25
FOURTH READER.	1 vol. 12mo.	33
COURSE OF READING, OR FIFTH READER.	12mo.	75
ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY.	1 vol. large 12mo.	1 00

Great pains have been taken to make these books superior to any other reading-books in use, by reducing them to a complete practical system, founded on the nature of the language, by which the proper delivery of all sentences may be determined, and Reading elevated to the rank of a science. The proper and thorough use of these books places it in the power of every pupil to become an accomplished reader. The selections will be found to contain some of the finest gems in the language, which cannot fail of interesting the pupil, and cultivate a literary taste.

THE FIRST AND SECOND READERS introduce successively the different parts of speech, and are designed to combine a knowledge of their grammatical functions with the meaning and pronunciation of words.

THE THIRD AND FOURTH READERS commence with a series of exercises on articulation and modulation, containing numerous examples for practice on the elementary sounds (including errors to be corrected) and on the different movements of the voice produced by sentential structure, by emphasis, and by the passions.

THE COURSE OF READING comprises three parts: the *first part* containing a more elaborate description of elementary sounds and of the parts of speech grammatically considered, than was deemed necessary in the preceding works; *part second*, a complete classification and description of every sentence to be found in the English, or in any other language; *part third*, paragraphs; or sentences in their connection unfolding general thoughts, as in the common reading-books.

THE ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY closes the series with an exhibition of the whole theory and art of Elocution exclusive of gesture. It contains, besides the classification of sentences, the laws of punctuation and delivery deduced from it, the whole followed by carefully selected pieces for sentential analysis and vocal practice.

RECOMMENDATIONS OF MANDEVILLE'S SERIES OF READERS

That the series is eminently practical and highly approved is shown by the following testimonials, selected from the thousands that have been received from public educators, who have tested them by thorough examination or actual use.

*From WALTER BAILEY, Supr. Public Schools, Fourth District, New Orleans,
May 24th, 1852.*

"I have examined, with much care and interest, Professor Mandeville's series of Readers, and am much gratified to observe that he has reduced the subject of punctuation and delivery to a complete system; and they possess such superior advantages over any others that I have ever examined, that I have adopted them as text-books in the public schools under my supervision."

*. In July, 1852, Mandeville's Reading books were adopted and introduced in all the Public Schools of New Orleans.

*The following Resolution was unanimously adopted by the Board of Education
of St. Louis, October, 12th, 1852.*

*Resolved, That Professor Mandeville's Series of Readers be substituted as text-books
for Swan's Readers in the Public Schools of this city."*

From the late S. L. HOLMES, City Superintendent of Schools, Brooklyn.

"Mandeville's Reading Books are used in all of the Public Schools of Brooklyn, and with great satisfaction and profit, both to teacher and pupil. As mere reading books they are probably unsurpassed either in matter or system; but as a means of disclosing the true structure of our language, and pointing out the proper mode of parsing it, this series is believed to be altogether unequalled."

PROF. MANDEVILLE'S LECTURES.—"The Committee to whom was intrusted the preparation of an expression of the sentiments of the Teachers of the Public, Ward, Corporate and Private Schools of the City of New York, who have attended Prof. Mandeville's Lectures. "his course on Elocution, respectfully report the following resolutions:

"*Resolved, That the course of Lectures on Elocution, by Prof. Mandeville, which we have attended, has been to us a source of much gratification and profit.*

"*Resolved, That his system, based upon sound Philosophical principles, is an easy, progressive, natural, and eminently original method of attaining a knowledge of the classification and structure of every kind of sentence in the English language, with its appropriate punctuation and delivery; and we are happy to say unhesitatingly, that our opinion, his course, if faithfully carried out by teachers as he recommends, is better calculated to make good readers than any other with which we have been acquainted."*

*The following is signed by all the Principals of the Syracuse Public Schools,
except one.*

"We, the undersigned, Principals of Public Schools in the City of Syracuse, having formed some acquaintance with Mandeville's System of Reading and Oratory, take occasion cheerfully to express our unfeigned approval and admiration of the same, as the only truly Scientific System known to us, and our belief that its universal introduction into the Public Schools of our country, would prove a very valuable accession to its present educational facilities."

THE SHAKSPEARIAN READER

BY J. W. S. HOWE.

12mo. 447 pages. Price \$1 25.

This work is prepared expressly for the use of Classes in schools and the reading circle, and contains a Collection of the most approved Plays of Shakspeare, carefully revised, with introductory and explanatory notes.

"This is a very handsome volume, and it will prove, we believe, a very popular one. Probably no man living is better qualified for the task of preparing a work of this kind than Prof. Howe, who has long been a teacher of elocution, and from his lectures on Shakspeare, has acquired a high reputation for his masterly analysis of the great dramatist. The only fault that we find with his book is that he has left out the comic parts, and has given nothing of Falstaff. But his reasons for the omission are sound and discriminating."—*New York Mirror*.

PRIMARY SPELLER AND READER.

BY ALBERT D. WRIGHT.

Price 12½ Cents.

This little volume of 144 pages combines a Primary Spelling-book and Reader, happily illustrated with numerous cuts, intended to attract the attention of the young, and to suggest thought for oral instruction and conversation.

It is confidently believed, that the proper use of this little book will obviate most of the difficulties experienced at the commencement of a child's education.

As fast as the letters are learned, an application is immediately made of them.

No word is given in which a letter occurs that has not been previously learned.

The capital letters are taught one at a time, and by review in reading lessons.

The words are systematically presented, being classified by their vowel sounds and terminating consonants; and generally, at the end of each class, they are arranged into little spelling lessons.

The learner is immediately initiated into reading lessons, composed of words of two or three letters, and is then led progressively into more difficult words.

"This is an excellent little book for children, and an improvement on all other Primary Lessons."—*N. Y. Observer*.

"We most heartily commend it to the favorable regard of teachers and parents."—*Teachers' Advocate*.

CLASS-BOOK OF POETRY.

BY ELIZA ROBBINS.

Containing a judicious, beautiful, and interesting Collection of Poetry for the Use of Children in Schools, and private reading. 12mo.

16mo. 252 pages. Price 75 cents.

Extract from the Author's Preface.

"In no way is a graceful and refined style of speech so naturally formed as by poetic language made thoroughly familiar to the young. 'I do not like poetry; I cannot understand it,' often say half-taught children. Give them the poetry of good writers, with a little necessary comment, and you will remove all obscurity from the most instructive and effective poetry, and all distaste to it. I have endeavored to do this in the following collection, and I trust that while it exhibits 'only things pure,' 'lovely, and of good report,' it may also give much pleasure, and be serviceable accordingly."

GUIDE TO KNOWLEDGE.

By ELIZA ROBBINS. 16mo. 400 pages. Price 63 cents.

This contains a large amount of useful information, communicated in an entertaining and easy style of familiar questions and answers on every-day subjects, such as children are constantly asking questions about.

"The basis of this work is the 'Child's Guide to Knowledge—an elementary book which has been much used in England for many years, and is particularly adapted to our own country and nation. It commences with questions and answers on those elementary topics which occupy the attention of the young mind, and ranges over the complete circle of useful knowledge. It is a storehouse of various information for the young. We know of no elementary book, that with the necessary aid of judicious instructors, and suitable illustrative helps, can be made more useful to youth. Accompanying is a dictionary of technical terms. We cordially recommend it to the notice of teachers."—*Journal and Messenger.*

CLASS-BOOK OF ZOOLOGY.

By PROF. B. JAEGER. 18mo. Price 42 cents.

This work is designed to afford to pupils in common schools and academies a knowledge of the Animal Kingdom, not by making it a tiresome study, overloaded with incomprehensible technical terms taken from Latin and Greek, but as a scientific, amusing, instructive, and useful occupation for the juvenile mind, imparting a taste for collecting and preserving zoological specimens, and furnishing subjects for interesting and elevated observation.

4

THE CHILD'S FIRST HISTORY OF ROME.

BY MISS E. M. SEWELL.

18mo. 255 pages. Price 50 Cents.

In the preparation of this work for the use of children, the authoress has drawn her materials from the most reliable sources, and incorporated them into a narrative at once unostentatious, perspicuous, and graphic, aiming to be understood by those for whom she wrote, and to impress deeply and permanently on their minds the historical facts contained in the book. The entire work is clothed in a style at once pleasing and comprehensible to the juvenile mind.

"The author of this work has been very successful in her style of narration, as well as gone to the best sources accessible for her facts. While there is nothing light and trivial in her manner, there is all the vivacity of the most lively fireside story-teller; and those things, "of which it is a shame to speak," she gets over with great judgment, delicacy and tact. While it is eminently a child's book, we greatly misjudge if it should not prove a favorite with adults, especially that class who cannot command time to read protracted histories."—*Christian Mirror*.

A FIRST HISTORY OF GREECE.

BY MISS E. M. SEWELL.

18mo. 355 pages. Price 63 Cents.

This work is designed to impart to young people a more clear and understandable knowledge of Grecian history than is attainable through any of the numerous works on that subject that have been accumulating during the last century. By selecting and presenting clearly and concisely only prominent characters and events, and not overloading and rendering their perusal irksome by a mass of minor details, the authoress has rendered an essential service to the youth of our country.

"Miss Sewell is eminently successful in this attempt to set forth the history of Greece in a manner suited to the instruction of the young. The chronology is lucid, the events are well selected, and the narrative is perspicuous and simple. The facts and the method of presenting them are taken mainly from the work of Bishop Thirlwall, an excellent authority, and the work as a whole is the best with which we are acquainted for the use of children in their lessons of Grecian History, whether in the school-room or the family circle."—*Providence Journal*.

"She has faithfully condensed her subject, from the Siege of Troy, B. C. 1184, to the destruction of Corinth, and the annexation of Greece, as a province to the Roman Empire, A. C. 141; forming a most excellent outline, to be filled up by the future acquisitions of the reader. The chronological table of cotemporary events attached is a valuable addition."—*Cincinnati Daily Times*.

MANUAL OF GRECIAN AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.

BY DR. R. F. BOJSEN.

WITH NOTES AND QUESTIONS BY REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD.

1 Vol. 12mo. 209 pages. Price \$1 00.

The present Manuals of Greek and Roman Antiquities are far superior to any thing on the same topics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says of the Roman Manual: 'Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement on all preceding works of the kind. We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader readily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which, though long ago assailed and extirpated by Neibuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our manuals.'

HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

BY MRS. MARKHAM. REVISED BY ELIZA ROBBINS.

12mo. 387 pages. Price 75 Cents.

This work covers a period from the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Victoria, containing questions adapted to the use of schools in this country

"Mrs. Markham's History was used by that model for all teachers, the late Dr. Arnold, master of the great English school at Rugby, and agrees in its character with his enlightened and pious views of teaching history. It is now several years since I adapted this history to the form and price acceptable in the schools in the United States. I have recently revised it, and trust that it may be extensively serviceable in education.

"The principal alterations from the original are a new and more convenient division of paragraphs, and entire omission of the conversations annexed to the chapters. In the place of these I have affixed questions to every page that may at once facilitate the work of the teacher and the pupil. The rational and moral features of this book first commended itself to me, and I have used it successfully with my own scholars."—*Extract from the American Editor's Preface.*

MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY

12mo. 396 pages. Price \$1 00.

This work was originally prepared by Wilhelm Putz, an eminent German scholar, and translated and edited in England by Rev. T. K. Arnold, and is now revised and introduced to the American public in a well-written preface, by Mr. George W. Greene, teacher of modern languages in Brown University.

As a text-book on Ancient History for Colleges and advanced Academies, this volume is believed to be one of the best compends published.

HAND-BOOK OF MEDIEVAL GEOGRAPHY & HISTORY

BY WILHELM PUTZ

TRANSLATED BY REV. R. B. PAUL, M. A.

1 Vol. 211 pages. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

The characteristics of this volume are: precision, condensation, and luminous arrangement. It is precisely what it pretends to be—a manual, a sure and conscientious guide for the student through the crooks and tangles of Mediæval History. All the great principles of this extensive period are carefully laid down, and the most important facts skilfully grouped around them.

MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

BY WILHELM PUTZ

TRANSLATED BY REV. R. B. PAUL, M. A.

12mo. 336 pages. Price \$1 00.

This volume completes the series of the author's works on geography and history. Every important fact of the period, comprehensive as it is both in geography and history, is presented in a concise yet clear and connected manner, so as to be of value, not only as a text-book for students, but to the general reader for reference. Although the facts are greatly condensed, as of necessity they must be, yet they are presented with so much distinctness as to produce a fixed impression on the mind. It is also reliable as the work of an indefatigable German scholar, for correct information relating to the progress and changes of states and nations—literature, the sciences and the arts—and all that combines in modern civilization.

**A DIGEST OF THE LAWS, CUSTOMS, MANNERS AND
INSTITUTIONS OF THE ANCIENT AND MODERN
NATIONS.**

BY THOMAS DEW.

Late President of the College of William and Mary.

1 Vol. 8vo. 662 pages. Price \$2 00.

On examination, it will be found that more than ordinary labor has been expended upon this work, and that the author has proceeded upon higher principles, and has had higher aims in view than historical compilers ordinarily propose to themselves. Instead of being a mere catalogue of events, chronologically arranged, it is a careful, laborious, and instructive digest of the laws, customs, manners, institutions, and civilization of the ancient and modern nations.

The department of modern history in particular has been prepared with unusual care and industry.

From JOHN J. OWEN, Professor in New York Free Academy.

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Dew's 'Digest of the Laws, Manners, Customs, &c., of Ancient and Modern Nations.' It furnishes a desideratum in the study of history which I have long desired to see. The manner in which history is generally studied in our institutions of learning, is, in my judgment, very defective. The great central points or epochs of history are not made to stand out with sufficient prominence. Events of minor importance are made to embarrass the memory by the confused method of their presentation to the mind; history is studied by pages and not by subjects. In the wilderness of events through which the student is groping his way, he soon becomes lost and perplexed. The past is as obscure as the future. His lesson soon becomes an irksome task. The memory is wearied with the monotonous task of striving to retain the multitudinous events of each daily lesson.

"This evil appears to be remedied in a great degree by Prof. Dew's admirable arrangement. Around the great points of history he has grouped those of subordinate importance. Each section is introduced by a caption, in which the subject is briefly stated, and so as to be easily remembered. Thus the student having mastered the leading events, will find little or no difficulty in treasuring up the minor points in their order and connection. I trust the book will be adopted in our higher institutions of learning. I greatly prefer it to any history for the use of schools which I have seen."

HISTORY OF GERMANY.

BY FREDERICH KOHLRAUSCH.

1 Vol. 500 pages. 8vo. Price \$1 50.

This history extends from the earliest period to the present time and has been translated from the latest German edition by James D. Hase.

"We recommend it strongly to those of our readers who desire a lucid, comprehensive, and impartial history of the rise, progress, and condition of the Germanic Empire
—*Evening Gazette.*

D. APPLETON & CO., PUBLISHERS.

HISTORICAL AND MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.

BY RICHARD MAGNALL. REVISED BY MRS. LAURENCE.

12mo. 396 pages. Price \$1 00.

The American authoress of this excellent book has made it peculiarly well adapted to the schools of this country by adding to it a chapter on the history and constitution of the United States, and by large additions on the elements of mythology, astronomy, architecture, heraldry, &c., &c. This edition is embellished by numerous cuts, a large portion of the work is devoted to judicious questions and answers on ancient and modern history, which must be very serviceable to teachers and pupils.

"This is an admirable work to aid both teachers and parents in instructing children and youth, and there is no work of the kind that we have seen that is so well calculated to 'awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds,' and to satisfy that curiosity when awakened."—*Commercial Advertiser*.

HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

BY GEO. W. GREENE.

1 Vol. 12mo. 450 pages. Price \$1 00.

This work will be found to contain a clear and satisfactory exposition of the revolutions of the middle ages, with such general views of literature, society, and manners, as are required to explain the passages from ancient to modern history.

Instead of a single list of sovereigns, the author has given full genealogical tables, which are much clearer and infinitely more satisfactory.

GENERAL HISTORY OF CIVILIZATION IN EUROPE.

BY M. GUIZOT

1 Vol. 816 pages. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

This work embraces a period from the fall of the Roman empire to the French revolution, and has been edited from the second English edition, by Prof. C. S. Henry, who has added a few notes. The whole work is made attractive by the clear and lively style of the author.

9

HISTORY OF ROME.

BY DR. THOMAS ARNOLD.

Three Volumes in One. 8vo. 670 pages. \$1 00

Arnold's History of Rome is a well-known standard work, as full and accurate as Niebuhr, but much more readable and attractive; more copious and exact than Keightley or Schmitz, and more reliable than Michelet, it has assumed a rank second to none in value and importance. Its style is admirable, and it is every where imbued with the truth-loving spirit for which Dr. Arnold was pre-eminent. For Colleges and Schools this history is invaluable; and for private, as well as public libraries, it is indispensable.

LECTURES ON MODERN HISTORY.

BY DR. THOMAS ARNOLD.

Large 12mo. 428 pages. Price \$1 25.

Edited from the second London edition, with a preface and notes of Henry Reed, M. A., Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.

"These lectures, eight in number, furnish the best possible introduction to a philosophical study of modern history. Prof. Reed has added greatly to the worth and interest of the volume, by appending to each lecture such extracts from Dr. Arnold's other writings as would more fully illustrate its prominent points. The notes and appendix which he has thus furnished are exceedingly valuable."—*Evening Post*.

MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY.

BY W. G. TAYLOR, LL. D., M. R. A. S.

Part I.—Containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Scholars and Travellers.

Part II.—Containing the Rise and Progress of the Principal European Nations, their Political History, and the Changes in their Social Condition; with a History of the Colonies founded by Europeans. Revised by C. S. Taylor, D. D. 8vo. \$2 50.

PHILOSOPHY OF SIR WM. HAMILTON.

EDITED BY O. W. WIGHT.

1 vol. 8vo. 530 pages. Price \$1 50.

This handsome octavo volume is issued in a beautiful style, and is designed to be used as a text-book in schools and colleges. It embraces all the metaphysical writings of Sir Wm. Hamilton, one of the most noted philosophers and logicians of the day, whose writings deserve the attention and consideration of those who have charge of our seminaries of learning.

"With the severest logic, and a power of analysis that is well nigh matchless, he unites the most perspicuous and exact style, expressing the nicest shades of thought, with undeviating accuracy. And his writings display remarkable erudition as well as discrimination; he shows himself perfectly familiar with the theories and arguments of all who have gone before him, whether in earlier or later days; and while he renders due honor to each, he knows no such thing as being in bondage to a great name."—*Puritan Recorder*.

HISTORY OF MODERN PHILOSOPHY.

BY M. VICTOR COUSIN.

TRANSLATED BY O. W. WIGHT.

2 vols. 8vo. 891 pages. Price \$3 00.

This is the ablest and most popular of all Cousin's works. It contains a full exposition of Eclecticism, by its founder and ablest supporter; gives a collected account of the history of philosophy from the earliest times; makes a distinct classification of systems, affords brief yet intelligible glimpses into the interior of almost every school, whether ancient or modern; and a detailed analysis of Locke, which unanswerably refutes a sensualistic theory that has borne so many bitter fruits of irreligion and atheism.

"M. Cousin is the greatest philosopher of France."—*Sir William Hamilton*.

"A writer, whose pointed periods have touched the chords of modern society, and thrilled through the minds of thousands in almost every quarter of the civilized world."—*Edinburgh Review*.

"As regards that part of this work—its translation—which has fallen to Mr. Wight, we must say that it has the air of being well performed. We have not the original at hand to compare the two, but the flowing style of the English version demonstrates the translator's familiarity with the foreign language."—*Western Lit. Gazette*.

BOOK OF ORATORY.

BY EDWARD C. MARSHALL, A.M.

One Volume. 12mo., of 500 pages. Price \$1 00.

FIRST BOOK OF ORATORY,

AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE

One Volume. 12mo., of 237 pages. Price 62 Cents.

These works contain a larger number of elegant extracts than any similar ones, from the first American and English authors, among whom are Webster, Clay, Everett, Calhoun, Wirt, Randolph, Prentiss, Channing, Dewey, Burke, Brougham, Shakspeare, Byron, Scott, Hood, Bryant, and Longfellow, together with a complete digest of specimens of the oratory and poetry of all parts of the Union.

"A large and admirable selection of pieces for declamation, copious and varied, and well chosen with reference to speaking. The range of selection is almost universal, at least among modern writers in prose, verse and drama. They make a spirited collection of thought and rhetoric. The editor is a practical teacher of elocution, and evidently has a wide acquaintance with literature. It is as good a work of the kind as we ever saw."—*Evangelist*.

"It is an admirable collection of pieces for declamation, taken principally from eminent American orators."—*Tribune*.

THE MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ITALY.

BY THOMAS KEIGHTLEY.

18mo. 232 pages. Price 42 Cents.

As mythology is closely connected with History and Philosophy it is believed that its elements can be advantageously taught in our primary schools.

The present work is an abridgment of the author's larger treatise, and will be found well adapted to young persons.

The well-known reputation of the author is sufficient guaranty that the pupil who gets his first ideas of mythology from this book will not have any thing to *unlearn*.

"This is precisely the volume which has long been wanted in schools. As an introductory manual, it contains information relative to the gods and heroes of antiquity; and not a word occurs which could offend the delicacy of the most scrupulous female."—*Christian Remembrancer*.

FIRST LESSONS IN ENGLISH COMPOSITION.

BY G. P. QUACKENBOS, A. M.

12mo. Price 45 Cents

These "First Lessons" are intended for beginners in Grammar and Composition, and should be placed in their hands at whatever age it may be deemed best for them to commence these branches—say from nine to twelve years. In the first fifty pages, by means of lessons on the inductive system, and copious exercises under each, the pupil is made familiar with the nature and use of the different parts of speech, so as to be able to recognize them at once. He is then led to consider the different kinds of clauses and sentences, and is thus prepared for Punctuation, on which subject he is furnished with well considered rules, arranged on a new and simple plan. Directions for the use of capital letters follow. Next come rules, explanations and examples, for the purpose of enabling the pupil to form and spell correctly such derivative words as *having, debarring, pinning*, and the like, which are not to be found in ordinary dictionaries, and regarding which the pupil is apt to be led astray by the fact that a change is made in the primitive word before the addition of the suffix. This done, the scholar is prepared to express thoughts in his own language, and is now required to write sentences of every kind, a word being given to suggest an idea for each; he is taught to vary them by means of different arrangements and modes of expression; to analyze compound sentences into simple ones, and to combine simple ones into compound. Several lessons are then devoted to Style. The essential properties, purity, propriety, precision, clearness, strength, harmony, and unity, are next treated, examples for correction being presented under each. The different kinds of composition follow; and, specimens having been first given, the pupil is required to compose successively letters, descriptions, narrations, biographical sketches, essays, and argumentative discourses. After this, the principal figures receive attention; and the work closes with a list of subjects carefully selected, arranged under their proper heads, and in such a way that the increase in difficulty is very gradual. The work has received the universal approval of Teachers and the Press throughout the Union.

QUACKENBOS'

ADVANCED LESSONS IN COMPOSITION AND RHETORIC

A DIGEST OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

BY L. T. COVELL.

12mo. Price 50 Cents

This work, which is just published, is designed as a Text-Book for the use of Schools and Academies; it is the result of long experience, of an eminently successful Teacher, and will be found to possess many peculiar merits.

At a regular meeting of the Board of Education of Rochester, held June 12, 1858, the following resolution was unanimously adopted:

"Resolved, That Covell's Digest of English Grammar be substituted for Wells' Grammar, as a Text-Book in the public schools of this city, to take effect at the commencement of the next school year."

Extract from the Minutes of a Regular Meeting of the Board of Education of Troy, May 31st, 1858.

"Mr. Jones, from Committee on text-books, and school librarians, moved, that Ballou's English Grammar be stricken from the list of text-books, and Covell's be substituted. —Passed."

From forty-four Teachers of Public Schools, Pittsburg, Pa.

"The undersigned have examined 'Covell's Digest of English Grammar,' and are of opinion that in the justness of its general views, the excellence of its style, the brevity, accuracy, and perspicuity of its definitions and rules, the numerous examples and illustrations, the adaptation of its synthetical exercises, the simplicity of its method of analysis, and in the plan of its arrangement, this work surpasses any other grammar now before the public; and that in all respects it is most admirably adapted to the use of schools and academies."

From all the Teachers of Public Schools of the City of Alleghany, Pa.

We, the undersigned, Teachers of Alleghany city, having carefully examined Mr. Covell's Digest of English Grammar, and impartially compared it with other grammars now in use, are fully satisfied that, while it is in no respect inferior to others, it is in very many respects much superior. While it possesses all that is necessary for the advanced student, and much that is not found in other grammars, it is so simplified as to adapt it to the capacity of the youngest learner. We are confident that much time and labor will be saved, and greater improvement secured to our pupils in the study of this science, by its introduction into our schools; hence we earnestly recommend to the Boards of Directors of this city, its adoption as a uniform text-book upon this science in the schools under their direction."

From JOHN J. WOLOORT, A. M., Pr. and Supt. 9th Ward School, Pittsburg, Pa.

"'Covell's Digest of English Grammar' not only evinces the most unceasing labor, the most extensive research, the most unrelaxing effort, and the most devoted self-sacrificing study of its author, but it is the most complete, the most perfect, and, to me, the most satisfactory exposition of English Grammar that has come to my notice. It appears to me that every youth aspiring to become master of the English language, from the rudimental principles to the full, round, beautiful, faultless, perfect period, will make this volume his 'vade mecum.'"

EXPOSITION OF THE GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURE OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

BY JOHN MULLIGAN, A. M.

Large 12mo. 574 pages. \$1 50.

This work is a comprehensive and complete system of English Grammar, embracing not only all that has been developed by the later philologists, but also the results of years of study and research on the part of its author. One great advantage of this book is its admirable arrangement. Instead of proceeding at once to the dry details which are distasteful and discouraging to the pupil, Mr. M. commences by viewing the sentence as a whole, analyzing it into its proper parts, and exhibiting their connection; and, after having thus parsed the sentence logically, proceeds to consider the individual words that compose it, in all their grammatical relations. This is the natural order; and experience proves that the arrangement here followed not only imparts additional interest to the subject, but gives the pupil a much clearer insight into it, and greatly facilitates his progress.

From DR. JAMES W. ALEXANDER.

"I thank you for the opportunity of perusing your work on the structure of the English language. It strikes me as being one of the most valuable contributions to this important branch of literature. The mode of investigation is so unlike what appears in our ordinary compilations, the reasoning is so sound, and the results are so satisfactory and so conformable to the genius and great authorities of our mother tongue, that I propose to recur to it again and again."

Extract from a letter from E. C. BENDICT, Esq., President of the Board of Education of the City of New York.

"I have often thought our language needed some work in which the principles of grammatical science and of the structure of the language, philosophically considered, were developed and applied to influence and control the *usus* and *consuetudo* of Horace and Quintilian, which seem to me to have been too often the principal source of solecisms, irregularity and corruption. In this point of view, I consider your work a valuable and appropriate addition to the works on the language."

From WM. HORACE WEBSTER, President of the Free Academy, New York.

"The exposition of the grammatical structure of the English language by Professor Mulligan, of this city, is a work, in my opinion, of great merit, and well calculated to impart a thorough and critical knowledge of the grammar of the English language.

"No earnest English student can fail to profit by the study of this treatise, yet it is designed more particularly for minds somewhat maturer, and for pupils who are capable and have a desire, to comprehend the principles and learn the philosophy of our own language."

DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

BY ALEXANDER REID, A. M.

12mo. 572 pages. Price \$1 00.

This work, which is designed for schools, contains the PRONUNCIATION and Explanation of all English words authorized by eminent writers.

A Vocabulary of the roots of English words.

An Accented List of GREEK, LATIN, and SCRIPTURE proper names.

An Appendix, showing the pronunciation of nearly 3,000 of the most important GEOGRAPHICAL names.

It is printed on fine paper, in clear type, strongly bound.

And is unquestionably one of the best dictionaries for the school-room extant.

From C. S. HENRY, Professor of Philosophy, History, and Belles-Lettres, in the University of the City of New York.

"Reid's Dictionary of the English Language is an admirable book for the use of schools. Its plan combines a greater number of desirable conditions for such a work, than any with which I am acquainted; and it seems to me to be executed in general with great judgment, fidelity, and accuracy."

From HENRY REED, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania.

"Reid's Dictionary of the English Language appears to have been compiled upon sound principles, and with judgment and accuracy. It has the merit, too, of combining much more than is usually looked for in dictionaries of small size, and will, I believe, be found excellent as a convenient manual for general reference, and also for various purposes of education."

GRAHAM'S ENGLISH SYNONYMS, CLASSIFIED AND EXPLAINED;

**WITH PRACTICAL EXERCISES. DESIGNED FOR SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE TUTORING
WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND ILLUSTRATIVE AUTHORITIES.**

BY HENRY REED, LL. D.

1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

This is one of the best books published in the department of language, and will do much to arrest the evil of making too common use of inappropriate words. The work is well arranged for classes, and can be made a branch of common school study.

It is admirably arranged. The Synonyms are treated with reference to their character, as generic and specific; as active and passive; as positive and negative; and as miscellaneous synonyms.

HAND-BOOK OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

BY G. R. LATHAM, M. D., F. R. S.

12mo. 400 pages. Price \$1 25.

This work is designed for the use of students in the University and High Schools.

"His work is rigidly scientific, and hence possesses a rare value. With the wide-spread growth of the Anglo-Saxon dialect, the immense present and prospective power of those with whom this is their 'mother tongue,' such a treatise must be counted alike interesting and useful."—*Watchman and Reflector*.

"A work of great research, much learning, and to every thinking scholar it will be a book of study. The Germanic origin of the English language, the affinities of the English with other languages, a sketch of the alphabet, a minute investigation of the etymology of the language, &c., of great value to every philologist."—*Observer*.

HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

BY WILLIAM SPALDING, A. M.

PROFESSOR OF LOGIC, RHETORIC, AND METAPHYSICS, IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ST. ANDREW

12mo. 418 pages. Price \$1 00.

The above work, which is just published, is offered as a Text-book for the use of advanced Schools and Academies. It traces the literary progress of the nation from its dawn in Anglo-Saxon times, down to the present day. Commencing at this early period, it is so constructed as to introduce the reader gradually and easily to studies of this kind. Comparatively little speculation is presented, and those literary monuments of the earlier dates, which were thought most worthy of attention, are described with considerable fulness and in an attractive manner. In the subsequent pages, more frequent and sustained efforts are made to arouse reflection, both by occasional remarks on the relations between intellectual culture and the other elements of society, and by hints as to the theoretical laws on which criticism should be founded. The characteristics of the most celebrated modern works are analyzed at considerable length.

The manner of the author is remarkably plain and interesting, almost compelling the reader to linger over his pages with unwearied attention.

D. APPLETON & CO., PUBLISHERS.

CLASS-BOOK OF CHEMISTRY.

BY EDWARD L. YOUNANS.

12mo. 340 Pages. Price 75 Cents.

Every page of this book bears evidence of the author's superior ability of perfectly conforming his style to the capacity of youth. This is a merit rarely possessed by the authors of scientific school-books, and will be appreciated by every discriminating teacher. It is especially commended by the eminently practical manner in which each subject is presented. Its illustrations are drawn largely from the phenomena of daily experience, and the interest of the pupil is speedily awakened by the consideration that Chemistry is not a matter belonging exclusively to physicians and professors.

From PROF. WM. H. BIGELOW, Principal of Clinton Street Academy.

"The eminently practical character of the *Class-Book* treating of the familiar applications of the science, is in my opinion its chief excellence, and gives it a value far superior to any other work now before the public."

From DAVID STINE, A. M., formerly Principal of the Mathematical Department, and Lecturer in Natural Philosophy, Chemistry and Physiology, in Columbia Col.

"MR. YOUNANS: DEAR SIR,—I have carefully examined your *Class-Book* on Chemistry, and, in my opinion, it is better adapted for use in schools and academies than any other work on the subject that has fallen under my observation.

"I hope that the success of your *Class-Book* will be proportionate to its merits, and that your efforts to diffuse the knowledge of Chemistry will be duly appreciated by the friends of education."

"Either for Schools or for general reading, we know of no elementary work on Chemistry which in every respect pleases us so much as this."—*Com. Advertiser.*

CHART OF CHEMISTRY.

BY EDWARD L. YOUNANS.

Youmans' *Chart of Chemistry* accomplishes for the first time, for chemistry, what maps and charts have for geography, astronomy, geology, and the other natural sciences, by presenting a new and admirable method of illustrating this highly interesting and beautiful science. Its plan is to represent chemical compositions to the eye by colored diagrams, the areas of which express proportional quantities.

ABOVE, IN ATLAS FORM,

CLASS-BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY.

BY B. N. COMINGS, M. D.

12mo. 270 pages. Price 90 Cents.

This volume, which is well adapted to the wants of schools and academies, has been prepared from the "Principles of Physiology, by Comings and Comstock, and is brought out in its present form at the urgent request of numerous friends of education who have highly commended that work, which was found too expensive for general use in the school-room.

It will be found to explain and illustrate fully and clearly as many principles of physiology as can be expected in a work of its limit. That human physiology can be made more easy of comprehension, more profitable, and more attractive to the beginner of the study, by appropriate references to the comparative physiology of the inferior animals, than by any other method, is an established fact in the mind of the author, which he has made eminently available in the preparation of this work, thus giving to this work peculiar claims to the attention of teachers.

The work is illustrated by 24 plates and numerous wood-engravings, comprising in all over 200 figures.

COMPANION TO ABOVE. (IN PRESS.) Containing illustrations and Questions.

COMMON SCHOOL PHYSIOLOGY. Dr. Comings. (NEARLY READY.)

From ABRAHAM POWELSON, Jr., Teacher, No. 204 Schermerhorn Street, Brooklyn, New York.

"After a very careful examination of the Class-Book of Physiology, by Comings, I can freely say that I consider it a performance of superior excellence. It embodies a fund of information surpassing in importance and variety that of any other work of the kind which has come under my notice."

From ANDREW J. WELLES, Glastonbury, Conn.

"It appears to me to be admirably adapted to the purpose for which it was designed, and I think will readily be admitted into our schools."

"The illustrations are more complete, and in a style superior to any I have ever seen in a school-book, making it really attractive to the eye."

From WM. D. SHIPMAN, East Haddam, Ct.

"Please accept my thanks for a copy of your 'Class-Book of Physiology, by Dr. Comings.' I have given the work a somewhat careful examination, and am very strongly impressed with its value as an elementary work for schools and families. It contains a simple and lucid exhibition of the subject upon which it treats, and illustrates the sciences by a great amount of instructive and curious information, which cannot fail to make it an attractive book for ingenious young persons."

MANUAL OF ELEMENTARY GEOLOGY

BY SIR CHARLES LYELL, M. A., F. R. S.

1 Vol. 8vo. 512 pages. Price \$1 75.

This is a reprint of the fourth London edition of a work of distinguished reputation, beautifully illustrated by FIVE HUNDRED WOODCUTS. Being the production of a writer who stands at the head of the department of knowledge which he has undertaken to explain, is sufficient guaranty for the invaluable character of the work for the scientific reader and observer, as well as for general use in our seminaries of learning.

"There is no branch of natural science where there is a more quickly recurring necessity for new editions of elementary books, than Geology. It is itself but the germ of a science, daily gathering fresh facts and extending its jurisdiction over new fields of observation. What was a satisfactory account of its discoveries a few years ago, is now obsolete. And among the scholars and observers who have done most to advance the science, and are most competent to elucidate its present condition, is the author of the volume before us."—*Charleston Mercury*.

PRINCIPLES OF GEOLOGY.

BY SIR CHARLES LYELL, A. M., F. R. S.

1 Vol. 8vo. 834 pages. Price \$2 25.

"This is a noble volume of over 800 pages, 8vo., on fair paper, in clear type, and abundantly illustrated with maps, engravings and woodcuts—an honor to the publishers who have issued it, and speaking well for the progress in scientific studies in this country—inasmuch as it would not be re-published, without a fair prospect of a remunerating sale. It is a book that we cannot pretend to review; but we take pleasure in announcing its appearance as a work which those of our readers interested in the growing, and in many respects very practical science of geology, will be glad to see. The author stands among the foremost of those who have devoted themselves to reading the history of the earth as written in and upon its own bosom."—*Christian Register*.

"It will only be necessary to announce this new and handsome edition of Lyell's standard work on geology, to induce all lovers of this most instructive science, to secure a copy of the work, if possible; for every successive edition of such a work has a value which none of its predecessors had, inasmuch as new discoveries are being constantly made by the active author, and other distinguished geologists, which illustrate topics discussed in the work."—*Boston Traveller*.

GREEN'S BOTANY.

QUARTO. BEAUTIFULLY ILLUSTRATED.

Designed for the Use of Schools.

(NEARLY READY.)

FIRST LESSONS IN GEOMETRY.

BY ALPHEUS CROSBY.

18mo. Price 38 Cents.

This little mathematical volume is founded upon the model of Colburn's First Lessons in Arithmetic, and abounds in illustrative questions both general and numerical, being an attempt to take advantage of their juvenile conceptions of place, form, and magnitude, which the youthful mind conceives most easily and readily, and to give to them a scientific form, and make them the foundation of elevated and accurate attainments—thus rendering Geometrical truths simpler and plainer, and bringing them within the reach of young children without sacrificing any of that strictness of demonstration which is the peculiar beauty of this science. That the author has been eminently practical and successful in this attempt will be seen by reference to the book.

FIRST LESSONS IN BOOK-KEEPING.

SINGLE AND DOUBLE ENTRY.

BY JOS. H. PALMER, A.M.

12mo. Price 19 Cents.

This little volume is progressively and logically arranged; each principle is clearly set forth by itself and illustrated, 1st, by "Slate Exercises," and 2d, by "Blank-Book Exercises." The practice is thoroughly taught by numerous exercises, in which the pupil opens the accounts and conducts and closes them himself.

BLANKS ACCOMPANYING THE SAME. 19 cents.

TREATISE ON BOOK-KEEPING.

BY JOS. H. PALMER, A.B.

12mo. Price 63 c.

From Jos. McKim, *Supt. of Schools of the City of New York.*

"The arrangement of this work admirably combines the scientific and practical in a system of instruction which appears to be happily matured. It is well considered, and has in it more of *original adaptation* than is to be ordinarily met with in works upon this subject. I recommend it to the favor of business men and teachers of book keeping."

ARITHMETICAL SERIES.

BY GEO. R. PERKINS, LL. D

PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 160 pages. Price 21 Cents.

This work is in two parts. 1st, Intellectual Arithmetic, and 2d, Primary Written Arithmetic. It will be found to contain—

A familiar treatment of the ground rules, and an informal and extended explanation of the principles of Decimals, in connection with exercises in Federal Money.

ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC. 16mo. 350 pages. Price 42 Cents.

This work is peculiarly adapted to discipline the minds of those who study it.

No principle is left unelucidated, and new light is thrown upon many heretofore imperfectly illustrated.

The subject of Proportion and Ratio is presented with peculiar force; as also, in Equation of Payments, the method of finding the Cash Balance.

The method of Extraction of the Cube Root is greatly preferable to the old method. It is far more concise and more comprehensive saving nearly half the labor, and being applicable, with little variation, to the extraction of *all arithmetical roots*.

PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. 12mo. Cloth sides. 354 pages. Price 62 Cents.

The Practical Arithmetic, containing about 4000 examples, is substantially the same as the "Elementary," and is designed for the use of such institutions and schools as require more examples than are given in that work. The almost universal expression of those who have used it is, that "it is the best and most complete arithmetic published."

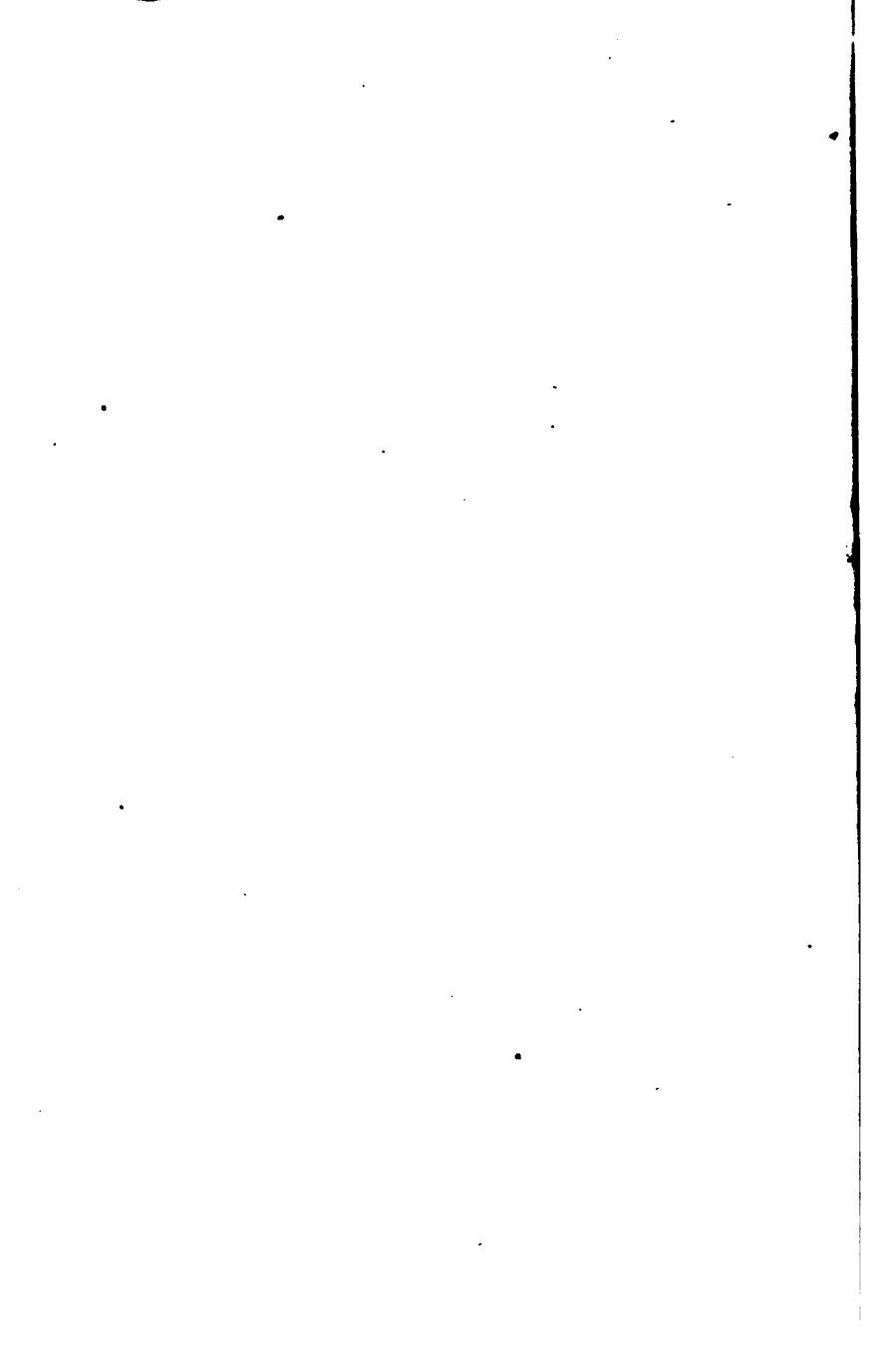
KEY TO THE PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. 12mo. Cloth sides. 324 pages. Price 75 Cents.

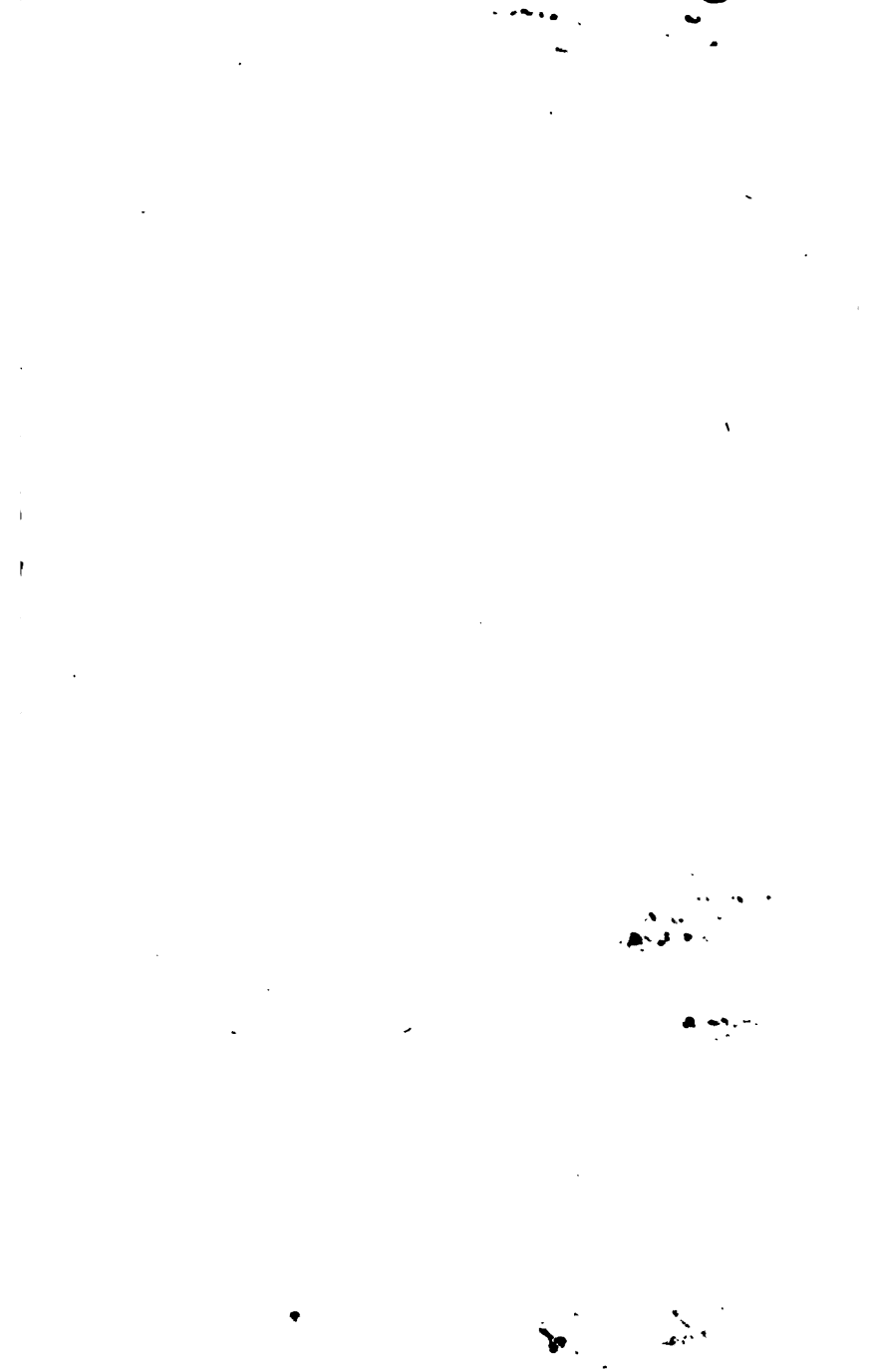
This work, which is just published, contains complete and full solutions to nearly 4000 examples, and is designed for the use of teachers only.

HIGHER ARITHMETIC. 12mo. Sheep. Price 75 Cents.

This work is what its name purports, and develops Arithmetical principles higher than are usually found in other school Arithmetics, and fully explains the science of numbers and their application.







Educational Text-Books.

GREEK AND LATIN—Continued.

BEZA'S Latin Testament. 12mo.....	75
CÆSAR'S Commentaries. Notes by Spencer. 12mo.....	1 00
CHAMPLIN'S Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. 12mo.....	75
CICERO De Officiis. Notes by Thatcher. 12mo.....	90
Select Orations. Notes by Johnson. 12mo.....	1 00
HERODOTUS, with Notes, by Prof. Johnson. 12mo.....	75
HORACE. With Notes, &c., by Lincoln. 12mo.....	1 25
KENDRICK'S Greek Ollendorff. 12mo.....	1 00
TACITUS' Historiæ. Notes by Tyler. 12mo.....	1 25
Germania and Agricola. Notes by do. 12mo.....	62
XENOPHON'S Memorabilia. Notes by Robbins. New rev. edit. 12mo.....	1 00
SALLUST, with Notes by Prof. Butler. 12mo.....	
KUHNER'S Elementary Greek Grammar. By Edwards and Taylor.....	
New improved edition. 12mo.....	1 50
LIVY, With Notes, &c., by Lincoln. 12mo. Map.....	1 00
QUINTUS CURTIUS RUFUS' Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated, with English Notes, by Professor Crosby. 12mo.....	1 00
SOPHOCLES' Oedipus Tyrannus. With English Notes, by Howard Crosby. 12mo.....	75

FRENCH.

BADOIS'S Grammar for Frenchmen to learn English 1 vol. 12mo.....	1 00
KEY to do.....	50
CHOUQUET'S French Conversations and Dialogues. 18mo.....	50
Young Ladies' Guide to French Composition. 12mo.....	75
COLLOT'S Dramatic French Reader. 12mo.....	1 00
COUTAN, A., Choix de Poësies. 12mo.....	1 00
DE FIVA'S Elementary French Reader. 16mo.....	50
Classic do 12mo.....	1 00
FENELON'S TELEMAQUE. Edited by Surenné. 1 vol. 18mo.....	50
or bound in 2 vols. 18mo.....	62
Le Nouveau Testament. Par J. F. Ostervald. 32mo.....	38
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning French. Edited by J. L. Jewett. 12mo.....	1 00
Method of Learning French. By V. Value. 12mo.....	1 00
First Lessons in French. By G. W. Greene. 18mo.....	75
COMPANION to Ollendorff's French Grammar. By G. W. Greene. 12mo.....	75
OLLENDORFF'S Grammar for Spaniards to Learn French. By Simonne. 12mo	2 00
ROEMER'S First French Reader. 12mo.....	1 00
Second do. 12mo.....	1 25
ROWAN'S Modern French Reader. 12mo.....	75
SIMONNE'S Treatise on French Verbs. 1 vol.....	50
SPIERS' and Surenné's Complete French and English, and English and French Dictionary. With Pronunciation, &c., &c. One large 8vo. volume, of 1490 pp.....	2 00
SPIERS and SURENNÉ'S Standard Pronouncing Dictionary of the French and English Languages. (School Edition.) Containing 973 pp. 12mo. new and large type.....	1 50
SURENNÉ'S French and English and English and French Dictionary. 16mo. 563 pp.....	90
French Manual and Traveller's Companion. 16mo.....	62
VOLTAIRE'S Histoire de Charles XII. Par Surenné. 18mo.....	50

John Coble M. A. A. Petros

GERMAN.

ADLER'S Progressive German Reader. 12mo.....	1 00
German and English and English and German Dictionary, Com- piled from the best authorities. 1 vol., large 8vo. Half Russia.....	5 00
Abridged German and English and English and German Dic- tionary. 12mo. 840 pp.....	1 50
ADLER'S Hand-Book of German Literature. 12mo.....	1 50
BRYAN'S Grammar for Germans to Learn English. 12mo.....	75
EICHHORN'S Practical German Grammar. 12mo.....	1 00
OEHLISCHLAGER, J. C. A Pronouncing German Reader.....	1 00
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning German. Edited by G. J. Adler. 12mo.	1 00
KEY to do.	75
OLLENDORFF'S New Grammar for Germans to learn the English Language. By P. Gands. 12mo.....	1 00
KEY to do. 12mo.....	75

ITALIAN.

BARETTI'S Italian and English and English and Italian Dictionary. 2 vols. 8mo. cloth.....	7 50
FORESTI'S Italian Reader. 12mo.....	1 00
MEADOWS' New Italian and English Dictionary. 1 vol. 16mo.....	1 50
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning Italian. Edited by F. Foresti. 12mo.	1 50
KEY to do.	75
OLLENDORFF'S Primary Lessons in Italian. 18mo.....	50

SPANISH.

BUTLER'S Spanish Teacher and Colloquial Phrase Book. 18mo.....	50
DON QUIXOTTE, (in Spanish.) 12mo.....	1 25
DE VERE'S Grammar of the Spanish Language. 12mo.....	1 00
MANDEVIL'S Spanish Reader. 12mo.....	25
MANDEVIL'S Second Reader, in Spanish. 12mo.....	50
MARSH'S Book-keeping in Spanish. 8vo.....	1 50
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning Spanish. By M. Velazquez and T. Simonne. 12mo.....	1 00
KEY to do.	75
OLLENDORFF'S New Method of Learning English applied to the Spanish. By Professors Palenzuela and Carenno. 12mo.....	2 00
KEY to do.	75
OLLENDORFF'S Grammar for Spaniards to learn English. By Palenzuela. 12mo.	2 00
KEY to do.	75
SIMONNE'S Grammar for Spaniards to learn French. 12mo.....	2 00
KEY to do.	75
SEOANE'S Neuman and Baretti's Spanish and English and English and Spanish Dictionary. By VELAZQUEZ. With Pronunciation, &c., &c. One large 8vo. vol. of 1400 pp.....	5 00
Abridged edit. of do. 12mo. nearly ready.....	1 75
TOLON'S Elementary Spanish Reader. 12mo.....	63
VELAZQUEZ' New Spanish Reader. With Lexicon. 12mo.....	1 25
Spanish Phrase Book. 18mo.....	39
FIRST BOOK in Orthography, (in Spanish.) 12mo.....	50

HEBREW.

GESENIUS'S Hebrew Grammar. Edited by Rödiger. Translated from the best German edition.....	2 00
UHELMANN'S Hutchinson. from the German. By Enoch	3 50

